who did not change to the nonaccrual-experience method at that time.

(i) *Effective date*. This section applies to any taxable year beginning after December 31, 1986.

[T.D. 8143, 52 FR 22774, June 16, 1987, as amended by T.D. 8194, 53 FR 12513, Apr. 15, 1988]

TAXABLE YEAR FOR WHICH ITEMS OF GROSS INCOME INCLUDED

§ 1.451–1 General rule for taxable year of inclusion.

(a) *General rule*. Gains, profits, and income are to be included in gross income for the taxable year in which they are actually or constructively received by the taxpayer unless includible for a different year in accordance with the taxpayer's method of accounting. Under an accrual method of accounting, income is includible in gross income when all the events have occurred which fix the right to receive such income and the amount thereof can be determined with reasonable accuracy. Therefore, under such a method of accounting if, in the case of compensation for services, no determination can be made as to the right to such compensation or the amount thereof until the services are completed, the amount of compensation is ordinarily income for the taxable year in which the determination can be made. Under the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting, such an amount is includible in gross income when actually or constructively received. Where an amount of income is properly accrued on the basis of a reasonable estimate and the exact amount is subsequently determined, the difference, if any, shall be taken into account for the taxable year in which such determination is made. To the extent that income is attributable to the recovery of bad debts for accounts charged off in prior years, it is includible in the year of recovery in accordance with the taxpayer's method of accounting, regardless of the date when the amounts were charged off. For treatment of bad debts and bad debt recoveries, see sections 166 and 111 and the regulations thereunder. For rules relating to the treatment of amounts received in crop shares, see section 61 and the regulations thereunder. For the year in which a partner must include his distributive share of partnership income, see section 706(a) and paragraph (a) of § 1.706–1. If a taxpayer ascertains that an item should have been included in gross income in a prior taxable year, he should, if within the period of limitation, file an amended return and pay any additional tax due. Similarly, if a taxpayer ascertains that an item was improperly included in gross income in a prior taxable year, he should, if within the period of limitation, file claim for credit or refund of any overpayment of tax arising therefrom.

(b) *Special rule in case of death*. (1) A taxpayer's taxable year ends on the date of his death. See section 443(a)(2) and paragraph (a)(2) of § 1.443–1. In computing taxable income for such year, there shall be included only amounts properly includible under the method of accounting used by the taxpayer. However, if the taxpayer used an accrual method of accounting, amounts accrued only by reason of his death shall not be included in computing taxable income for such year. If the taxpayer uses no regular accounting method, only amounts actually or constructively received during such year shall be included. (For rules relating to the inclusion of partnership income in the return of a decedent partner, see subchapter K, chapter 1 of the Code, and the regulations thereunder.)

(2) If the decedent owned an installment obligation the income from which was taxable to him under section 453, no income is required to be reported in the return of the decedent by reason of the transmission at death of such obligation. See section 453(d)(3). For the treatment of installment obligations acquired by the decedent's estate or by any person by bequest, devise, or inheritance from the decedent, see section 691(a)(4) and the regulations thereunder.

(c) *Special rule for employee tips*. Tips reported by an employee to his employer in a written statement furnished to the employer pursuant to section 6053(a) shall be included in gross income of the employee for the taxable year in which the written statement is furnished the employer.

For provisions relating to the reporting of tips by an employee to his employer, see section 6053 and § 31.6053–1 of this chapter (Employment Tax Regulations).

(d) *Special rule for ratable inclusion of original issue discount.* For ratable inclusion of original issue discount in respect of certain corporate obligations issued after May 27, 1969, see section 1232(a)(3).

(e) *Special rule for inclusion of qualified tax refund effected by allocation.* For rules relating to the inclusion in income of an amount paid by a taxpayer in respect of his liability for a qualified State individual income tax and allocated or reallocated in such a manner as to apply it toward the taxpayer's liability for the Federal income tax, see paragraph (f)(1) of § 301.6361–1 of this chapter (Regulations on Procedure and Administration).

(f) *Timing of income from notional principal contracts.* For the timing of income with respect to notional principal contracts, see § 1.446–3.

(g) *Timing of income from section 467 rental agreements.* For the timing of income with respect to section 467 rental agreements, see section 467 and the regulations thereunder.

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11709, Nov. 26, 1960, as amended by T.D. 7001, 34 FR 997, Jan. 23, 1969; T.D. 7154, 36 FR 24996, Dec. 28, 1971; 43 FR 59357, Dec. 20, 1978; T.D. 8491, 58 FR 53135, Oct. 14, 1993; T.D. 8820, 64 FR 26851, May 18, 1999]

§ 1.451–2 Constructive receipt of income.

(a) *General rule.* Income although not actually reduced to a taxpayer's possession is constructively received by him in the taxable year during which it is credited to his account, set apart for him, or otherwise made available so that he may draw upon it at any time, or so that he could have drawn upon it during the taxable year if notice of intention to withdraw had been given. However, income is not constructively received if the taxpayer's control of its receipt is subject to substantial limitations or restrictions. Thus, if a corporation credits its employees with bonus stock, but the stock is not available to such employees until some future date, the mere crediting on the books of the corporation does not constitute receipt. In the case of interest, dividends, or other earnings (whether or not credited) payable in respect of any deposit or account in a bank, building and loan association, savings and loan association, or similar institution, the following are not substantial limitations or restrictions on the taxpayer's control over the receipt of such earnings:

(1) A requirement that the deposit or account, and the earnings thereon, must be withdrawn in multiples of even amounts;

(2) The fact that the taxpayer would, by withdrawing the earnings during the taxable year, receive earnings that are not substantially less in comparison with the earnings for the corresponding period to which the taxpayer would be entitled had he left the account on deposit until a later date (for example, if an amount equal to three months' interest must be forfeited upon withdrawal or redemption before maturity of a one year or less certificate of deposit, time deposit, bonus plan, or other deposit arrangement then the earnings payable on premature withdrawal or redemption would be substantially less when compared with the earnings available at maturity);

(3) A requirement that the earnings may be withdrawn only upon a withdrawal of all or part of the deposit or account. However, the mere fact that such institutions may pay earnings on withdrawals, total or partial, made during the last three business days of any calendar month ending a regular quarterly or semiannual earnings period at the applicable rate calculated to the end of such calendar month shall not constitute constructive receipt of income by any depositor or account holder in any such institution who has not made a withdrawal during such period;

(4) A requirement that a notice of intention to withdraw must be given in advance of the withdrawal. In any case when the rate of earnings payable in respect of such a deposit or account depends on the amount of notice of intention to withdraw that is given, earnings at the maximum rate are constructively received during the taxable year regardless of how long the deposit

or account was held during the year or whether, in fact, any notice of intention to withdraw is given during the year. However, if in the taxable year of withdrawal the depositor or account holder receives a lower rate of earnings because he failed to give the required notice of intention to withdraw, he shall be allowed an ordinary loss in such taxable year in an amount equal to the difference between the amount of earnings previously included in gross income and the amount of earnings actually received. See section 165 and the regulations thereunder.

(b) *Examples of constructive receipt.* Amounts payable with respect to interest coupons which have matured and are payable but which have not been cashed are constructively received in the taxable year during which the coupons mature, unless it can be shown that there are no funds available for payment of the interest during such year. Dividends on corporate stock are constructively received when unqualifiedly made subject to the demand of the shareholder. However, if a dividend is declared payable on December 31 and the corporation followed its usual practice of paying the dividends by checks mailed so that the shareholders would not receive them until January of the following year, such dividends are not considered to have been constructively received in December. Generally, the amount of dividends or interest credited on savings bank deposits or to shareholders of organizations such as building and loan associations or cooperative banks is income to the depositors or shareholders for the taxable year when credited. However, if any portion of such dividends or interest is not subject to withdrawal at the time credited, such portion is not constructively received and does not constitute income to the depositor or shareholder until the taxable year in which the portion first may be withdrawn. Accordingly, if, under a bonus or forfeiture plan, a portion of the dividends or interest is accumulated and may not be withdrawn until the maturity of the plan, the crediting of such portion to the account of the shareholder or depositor does not constitute constructive receipt. In this case, such credited portion is income to the depositor or shareholder in the year in which the plan matures. However, in the case of certain deposits made after December 31, 1970, in banks, domestic building and loan associations, and similar financial institutions, the ratable inclusion rules of section 1232(a)(3) apply. See §1.1232–3A. Accrued interest on unwithdrawn insurance policy dividends is gross income to the taxpayer for the first taxable year during which such interest may be withdrawn by him.

[T.D. 6723, 29 FR 5342, Apr. 21, 1964; as amended by T.D. 7154, 36 FR 24997, Dec. 28, 1971; T.D. 7663, 44 FR 76782, Dec. 28, 1979]

§ 1.451–4 Accounting for redemption of trading stamps and coupons.

(a) *In general*—(1) *Subtraction from receipts.* If an accrual method taxpayer issues trading stamps or premium coupons with sales, or an accrual method taxpayer is engaged in the business of selling trading stamps or premium coupons, and such stamps or coupons are redeemable by such taxpayer in merchandise, cash, or other property, the taxpayer should, in computing the income from such sales, subtract from gross receipts with respect to sales of such stamps or coupons (or from gross receipts with respect to sales with which trading stamps or coupons are issued) an amount equal to—

(i) The cost to the taxpayer of merchandise, cash, and other property used for redemptions in the taxable year,

(ii) Plus the net addition to the provision for future redemptions during the taxable year (or less the net subtraction from the provision for future redemptions during the taxable year).

(2) *Trading stamp companies.* For purposes of this section, a taxpayer will be considered as being in the business of selling trading stamps or premium coupons if—

(i) The trading stamps or premium coupons sold by him are issued by purchasers to promote the sale of their merchandise or services,

(ii) The principal activity of the trade or business is the sale of such stamps or coupons,

(iii) Such stamps or coupons are redeemable by the taxpayer for a period of at least 1 year from the date of sale, and

(iv) Based on his overall experience, it is estimated that not more than two-thirds of the stamps or coupons sold which it is estimated, pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section, will be ultimately redeemed, will be redeemed within 6 months of the date of sale.

(b) *Computation of the net addition to or subtraction from the provision for future redemptions*—(1) *Determination of the provision for future redemptions.* (i) The provision for future redemptions as of the end of a taxable year is computed by multiplying ''estimated future redemptions'' (as defined in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph) by the estimated average cost of redeeming each trading stamp or coupon (computed in accordance with subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph).

(ii) For purposes of this section, the term ''estimated future redemptions'' as of the end of a taxable year means the number of trading stamps or coupons outstanding as of the end of such year that it is reasonably estimated will ultimately be presented for redemption. Such estimate shall be determined in accordance with the rules contained in paragraph (c) of this section.

(iii) For purposes of this section, the estimated average cost of redeeming each trading stamp or coupon shall be computed by including only the costs to the taxpayer of acquiring the merchandise, cash, or other property needed to redeem such stamps or coupons. The term ''the costs to the taxpayer of acquiring the merchandise, cash, or other property needed to redeem such stamps or coupons'' includes only the price charged by the seller (less trade or other discounts, except strictly cash discounts approximating a fair interest rate, which may be deducted or not at the option of the taxpayer provided a consistent course is followed) plus transportation or other necessary charges in acquiring possession of the goods. Items such as the costs of advertising, catalogs, operating redemption centers, transporting merchandise or other property from a central warehouse to a branch warehouse (or from a warehouse to a redemption center), and storing the merchandise or other property used to redeem stamps or coupons should not be included in costs of redeeming stamps or premium coupons, but rather should be accounted for in accordance with the provisions of sections 162 and 263.

(2) *Changes in provision for future redemptions.* For purposes of this section, a ''net addition to'' or ''net subtraction from'' the provision for future redemptions for a taxable year is computed as follows:

(i) Carry over the provision for future redemptions (if any) as of the end of the preceding taxable year,

(ii) Compute the provision for future redemptions as of the end of the taxable year in accordance with subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, and

(iii) If the amount referred to in subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph exceeds the amount referred to in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph, such excess is the net addition to the provision for future redemptions for the taxable year. On the other hand, if the amount referred to in such subdivision (i) exceeds the amount referred to in such subdivision (ii), such excess is the net subtraction from the provision for future redemptions for the taxable year.

(3) *Example.* The provisions of this paragraph and paragraph (a)(1) of this section may be illustrated by the following example:

Example. (a) X Company, a calendar year accrual method taxpayer, is engaged in the business of selling trading stamps to merchants. In 1971, its first year of operation, X sells 10 million stamps at $5 per 1,000; it redeems 3 million stamps for merchandise and cash of an average value of $3 per 1,000 stamps. At the end of 1971 it is estimated (pursuant to paragraph (c) of this section) that a total of 9 million stamps of the 10 million stamps issued in 1971 will eventually be presented for redemption. At this time it is estimated that the average cost of redeeming stamps (as described in subparagraph (1)(iii) of this paragraph) would continue to be $3 per 1,000 stamps. Under these circumstances, X computes its gross income from sales of trading stamps as follows:

Gross receipts from sales (10 million stamps at $5 per 1,000)	....	$50,000
Less:		
Cost of actual redemptions (3 million stamps at $3 per 1,000)	$9,000	....
Provision for future redemptions on December 31, 1971 (9 million stamps — 3 million stamps × $3 per 1,000)	18,000	....

		27,000
1971 gross income from sales of stamps		23,000

(b) In 1972, X also sells 10 million stamps at $5 per 1,000 stamps. During 1972 X redeems 7 million stamps at an average cost of $3.01 per 1,000 stamps. At the end of 1972 it is determined that the estimated future redemptions (within the meaning of subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph) is 8 million. It is further determined that the estimated average cost of redeeming stamps would continue to be $3.01 per 1,000 stamps. X thus computes its gross income from sales of trading stamps for 1972 as follows:

Gross receipts from sales (10 million stamps at $5 per 1,000)		$50,000
Less:		
Cost of actual redemptions (7 million stamps at $3.01 per 1,000)	$21,070	
Plus:		
Provision for future redemptions on Dec. 31, 1972 (8 million stamps at $3.01 per 1,000)	24,080	
Minus provision for future redemptions on Dec. 31, 1971	18,000	
Addition to provision for future redemptions	6,080	
Total cost of redemptions		27,150
1972 Gross income from sales of stamps		22,850

(c) *Estimated future redemptions*—(1) *In general.* A taxpayer may use any method of determining the estimated future redemptions as of the end of a year so long as—

(i) Such method results in a reasonably accurate estimate of the stamps or coupons outstanding at the end of such year that will ultimately be presented for redemption,

(ii) Such method is used consistently, and

(iii) Such taxpayer complies with the requirements of this paragraph and paragraphs (d) and (e) of this section.

(2) *Utilization of prior redemption experience.* Normally, the estimated future redemptions of a taxpayer shall be determined on the basis of such taxpayer's prior redemption experience. However, if the taxpayer does not have sufficient redemption experience to make a reasonable determination of his ''estimated future redemptions,'' or if because of a change in his mode of operation or other relevant factors the determination cannot reasonably be made completely on the basis of the taxpayer's own experience, the experiences of similarly situated taxpayers may be used to establish an experience factor.

(3) *One method of determining estimated future redemptions.* One permissible method of determining the estimated future redemptions as of the end of the current taxable year is as follows:

(i) Estimate for each preceding taxable year and the current taxable year the number of trading stamps or coupons issued for each such year which will ultimately be presented for redemption.

(ii) Determine the sum of the estimates under subdivision (i) of this subparagraph for each taxable year prior to and including the current taxable year.

(iii) The difference between the sum determined under subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph and the total number of trading stamps or coupons which have already been presented for redemption is the estimated future redemptions as of the end of the current taxable year.

(4) *Determination of an ''estimated redemption percentage.''* For purposes of applying subparagraph (3)(i) of this paragraph, one permissible method of estimating the number of trading stamps or coupons issued for a taxable year that will ultimately be presented for redemption is to multiply such number of stamps issued for such year by an ''estimated redemption percentage.'' For purposes of this section the term ''estimated redemption percentage'' for a taxable year means a fraction, the numerator of which is the number of trading stamps or coupons issued during a taxable year that it is reasonably estimated will ultimately be redeemed, and the denominator of which is the number of trading stamps or coupons issued during such year. Consequently, the product of such percentage and the number of stamps issued for such year equals the number of trading stamps or coupons issued for such year that it is estimated will ultimately be redeemed.

(5) *Five-year rule.* (i) One permissible method of determining the ''estimated redemption percentage'' for a taxable year is to—

(a) Determine the percentage which the total number of stamps or coupons redeemed in the taxable year and the 4

preceding taxable years is of the total number of stamps or coupons issued or sold in such 5 years; and

(b) Multiply such percentage by an appropriate growth factor as determined pursuant to guidelines published by the Commissioner.

(ii) If a taxpayer uses the method described in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph for a taxable year, it will normally be presumed that such taxpayer's ''estimated redemption percentage'' is reasonably accurate.

(6) *Other methods of determining estimated future redemptions.* (i) If a taxpayer uses a method of determining his ''estimated future redemptions'' (other than a method which applies the 5-year rule as described in subparagraph (5)(i) of this paragraph) such as a probability sampling technique, the appropriateness of the method (including the appropriateness of the sampling technique, if any) and the accuracy and reliability of the results obtained must, if requested, be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the district director.

(ii) No inference shall be drawn from subdivision (i) of this subparagraph that the use of any method to which such subdivision applies is less acceptable than the method described in subparagraph (5)(i) of this paragraph. Therefore, certain probability sampling techniques used in determining estimated future redemptions may result in reasonably accurate and reliable estimates. Such a sampling technique will be considered appropriate if the sample is—

(a) Taken in accordance with sound statistical sampling principles,

(b) In accordance with such principles, sufficiently broad to produce a reasonably accurate result, and

(c) Taken with sufficient frequency as to produce a reasonably accurate result.

In addition, if the sampling technique is appropriate, the results obtained therefrom in determining estimated future redemptions will be considered accurate and reliable if the evaluation of such results is consistent with sound statistical principles. Ordinarily, samplings and recomputations of the estimated future redemptions will be required annually. However, the facts and circumstances in a particular case may justify such a recomputation being taken less frequently than annually. In addition, the Commissioner may prescribe procedures indicating that samples made to update the results of a sample of stamps redeemed in a prior year need not be the same size as the sample of such prior year.

(d) *Consistency with financial reporting*—(1) *Estimated future redemptions.* For taxable years beginning after August 22, 1972, the estimated future redemptions must be no greater than the estimate that the taxpayer uses for purposes of all reports (including consolidated financial statements) to shareholders, partners, beneficiaries, other proprietors, and for credit purposes.

(2) *Average cost of redeeming stamps.* For taxable years beginning after August 22, 1972, the estimated average cost of redeeming each stamp or coupon must be no greater than the average cost of redeeming each stamp or coupon (computed in accordance with paragraph (b)(1)(iii) of this section) that the taxpayer uses for purposes of all reports (including consolidated financial statements) to shareholders, partners, beneficiaries, other proprietors, and for credit purposes.

(e) *Information to be furnished with return*—(1) *In general.* For taxable years beginning after August 22, 1972, a taxpayer described in paragraph (a) of this section who uses a method of determining the ''estimated future redemptions'' other than that described in paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section shall file a statement with his return showing such information as is necessary to establish the correctness of the amount subtracted from gross receipts in the taxable year.

(2) *Taxpayers using the 5-year rule.* If a taxpayer uses the method of determining estimated future redemptions described in paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section, he shall file a statement with his return showing, with respect to the taxable year and the 4 preceding taxable years—

(i) The total number of stamps or coupons issued or sold during each year, and

(ii) The total number of stamps or coupons redeemed in each such year.

(3) *Trading stamp companies.* In addition to the information required by subparagraph (1) or (2) of this paragraph, a taxpayer engaged in the trade or business of selling trading stamps or premium coupons shall include with the statement described in subparagraph (1) or (2) of this paragraph such information as may be necessary to satisfy the requirements of paragraph (a)(2)(iv) of this section.

[T.D. 7201, 37 FR 16911, Aug. 23, 1972, as amended by T.D. 7201, 37 FR 18617, Sept. 14, 1972]

§ 1.451–5 Advance payments for goods and long-term contracts.

(a) *Advance payment defined.* (1) For purposes of this section, the term ''advance payment'' means any amount which is received in a taxable year by a taxpayer using an accrual method of accounting for purchases and sales or a long-term contract method of accounting (described in §1.451–3), pursuant to, and to be applied against, an agreement:

(i) For the sale or other disposition in a future taxable year of goods held by the taxpayer primarily for sale to customers in the ordinary course of his trade or business, or

(ii) For the building, installing, constructing or manufacturing by the taxpayer of items where the agreement is not completed within such taxable year.

(2) For purposes of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph:

(i) The term ''agreement'' includes *(a)* a gift certificate that can be redeemed for goods, and *(b)* an agreement which obligates a taxpayer to perform activities described in subparagraph (1)(i) or (ii) of this paragraph and which also contains an obligation to perform services that are to be performed as an integral part of such activities; and

(ii) Amounts due and payable are considered ''received''.

(3) If a taypayer (described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph) receives an amount pursuant to, and to be applied against, an agreement that not only obligates the taxpayer to perform the activities described in subparagraph (1) (i) and (ii) of this paragraph, but also obligates the taxpayer to perform services that are not to be performed as an integral part of such activities, such amount will be treated as an ''advance payment'' (as defined in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph) only to the extent such amount is properly allocable to the obligation to perform the activities described in subparagraph (1) (i) and (ii) of this paragraph. The portion of the amount not so allocable will not be considered an ''advance payment'' to which this section applies. If, however, the amount not so allocable is less than 5 percent of the total contract price, such amount will be treated as so allocable except that such treatment cannot result in delaying the time at which the taxpayer would otherwise accrue the amounts attributable to the activities described in subparagraph (1) (i) and (ii) of this paragraph.

(b) *Taxable year of inclusion*—(1) *In general.* Advance payments must be included in income either—

(i) In the taxable year of receipt; or

(ii) Except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section.

(*a*) In the taxable year in which properly accruable under the taxpayer's method of accounting for tax purposes if such method results in including advance payments in gross receipts no later than the time such advance payments are included in gross receipts for purposes of all of his reports (including consolidated financial statements) to shareholders, partners, beneficiaries, other proprietors, and for credit purposes, or

(*b*) If the taxpayer's method of accounting for purposes of such reports results in advance payments (or any portion of such payments) being included in gross receipts earlier than for tax purposes, in the taxable year in which includible in gross receipts pursuant to his method of accounting for purposes of such reports.

(2) *Examples.* This paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). S, a retailer who uses for tax purposes and for purposes of the reports referred to in subparagraph (1)(ii)(a) of this paragraph, an accrual method of accounting under which it accounts for its sales of goods when the goods are shipped, receives advance payments for such goods. Such advance payments must be included in gross receipts for tax purposes either in the taxable year the payments are received or in the taxable year such goods are shipped (except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section).

Example (2). T, a manufacturer of household furniture, is a calendar year taxpayer who uses an accrual method of accounting pursuant to which income is accrued when furniture is shipped for purposes of its financial reports (referred to in subparagraph (1)(ii)(*a*) of this paragraph) and an accrual method of accounting pursuant to which the income is accrued when furniture is delivered and accepted for tax purposes. See §1.446–1(c)(1)(ii). In 1974, T receives an advance payment of $8,000 from X with respect to an order of furniture to be manufactured for X for a total price of $20,000. The furniture is shipped to X in December 1974, but it is not delivered to and accepted by X until January 1975. As a result of this contract, T must include the entire advance payment in its gross income for tax purposes in 1974 pursuant to subparagraph (1)(ii)(*b*) of this paragraph. T must include the remaining $12,000 of the gross contract price in its gross income in 1975 for tax purposes.

(3) *Long-term contracts.* In the case of a taxpayer accounting for advance payments for tax purposes pursuant to a long-term contract method of accounting under §1.460–4, or of a taxpayer accounting for advance payments with respect to a long-term contract pursuant to an accrual method of accounting referred to in the succeeding sentence, advance payments shall be included in income in the taxable year in which properly included in gross receipts pursuant to such method of accounting (without regard to the financial reporting requirement contained in subparagraph (1)(ii) (*a*) or (*b*) of this paragraph). An accrual method of accounting to which the preceding sentence applies shall consist of any method of accounting under which the income is accrued when, and costs are accumulated until, the subject matter of the contract (or, if the subject matter of the contract consists of more than one item, an item) is shipped, delivered, or accepted.

(4) *Installment method.* The financial reporting requirement of subparagraph (1)(ii) (*a*) or (*b*) of this paragraph shall not be construed to prevent the use of the installment method under section 453. See §1.446–1(c)(1)(ii).

(c) *Exception for inventoriable goods.* (1)(i) If a taxpayer receives an advance payment in a taxable year with respect to an agreement for the sale of goods properly includible in his inventory, or with respect to an agreement (such as a gift certificate) which can be satisfied with goods or a type of goods that cannot be identified in such taxable year, and on the last day of such taxable year the taxpayer—

(a) Is accounting for advance payments pursuant to a method described in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section for tax purposes,

(b) Has received ''substantial advance payments'' (as defined in subparagraph (3) of this paragraph) with respect to such agreement, and

(c) Has on hand (or available to him in such year through his normal source of supply) goods of substantially similar kind and in sufficient quantity to satisfy the agreement in such year,

then all advance payments received with respect to such agreement by the last day of the second taxable year following the year in which such substantial advance payments are received, and not previously included in income in accordance with the taxpayer's accrual method of accounting, must be included in income in such second taxable year.

(ii) If advance payments are required to be included in income in a taxable year solely by reason of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph, the taxpayer must take into account in such taxable year the costs and expenditures included in inventory at the end of such year with respect to such goods (or substantially similar goods) on hand or, if no such goods are on hand by the last day of such second taxable year, the estimated cost of goods necessary to satisfy the agreement.

(iii) Subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph does not apply if the goods or type of goods with respect to which the advance payment is received are not identifiable in the year the advance payments are required to be included in income by reason of subdivision (i) of this subparagraph (for example, where an amount is received for a gift certificate).

(2) If subparagraph (1)(i) of this paragraph is applicable to advance payments received with respect to an agreement, any advance payments received with respect to such agreement subsequent to such second taxable year must be included in gross income in

the taxable year of receipt. To the extent estimated costs of goods are taken into account in a taxable year pursuant to subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph, such costs may not again be taken into account in another year. In addition, any variances between the costs or estimated costs taken into account pursuant to subparagraph (1)(ii) of this paragraph and the costs actually incurred in fulfilling the taxpayer's obligations under the agreement must be taken into account as an adjustment to the cost of goods sold in the year the taxpayer completes his obligations under such agreement.

(3) For purposes of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, a taxpayer will be considered to have received "substantial advance payments" with respect to an agreement by the last day of a taxable year if the advance payments received with respect to such agreement during such taxable year plus the advance payments received prior to such taxable year pursuant to such agreement, equal or exceed the total costs and expenditures reasonably estimated as includible in inventory with respect to such agreement. Advance payments received in a taxable year with respect to an agreement (such as a gift certificate) under which the goods or type of goods to be sold are not identifiable in such year shall be treated as "substantial advance payments" when received.

(4) The application of this paragraph is illustrated by the following example:

Example. In 1971, X, a calendar year accrual method taxpayer, enters into a contract for the sale of goods (properly includible in X's inventory) with a total contract price of $100. X estimates that his total inventoriable costs and expenditures for the goods will be $50. X receives the following advance payments with respect to the contract:

1971	$35
1972	20
1973	15
1974	10
1975	10
1976	10

The goods are delivered pursuant to the customer's request in 1977. X's closing inventory for 1972 of the type of goods involved in the contract is sufficient to satisfy the contract. Since advance payments received by the end of 1972 exceed the inventoriable costs X estimates that he will incur, such payments constitute "substantial advance payments". Accordingly, all payments received by the end of 1974, the end of the second taxable year following the taxable year during which "substantial advance payments" are received, are includible in gross income for 1974. Therefore, for taxable year 1974 X must include $80 in his gross income. X must include in his cost of goods sold for 1974 the cost of such goods (or similar goods) on hand or, if no such goods are on hand, the estimated inventoriable costs necessary to satisfy the contract. Since no further deferral is allowable for such contract, X must include in his gross income for the remaining years of the contract, the advance payment received each year. Any variance between estimated costs and the costs actually incurred in fulfilling the contract is to be taken into account in 1977, when the goods are delivered. See paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(d) *Information schedule.* If a taxpayer accounts for advance payments pursuant to paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, he must attach to his income tax return for each taxable year to which such provision applies an annual information schedule reflecting the total amount of advance payments received in the taxable year, the total amount of advance payments received in prior taxable years which has not been included in gross income before the current taxable year, and the total amount of such payments received in prior taxable years which has been included in gross income for the current taxable year.

(e) *Adoption of method.* (1) For taxable years ending on or after December 31, 1969, and before January 1, 1971, a taxpayer (even if he has already filed an income tax return for a taxable year ending within such period) may secure the consent of the Commissioner to change his method of accounting for such year to a method prescribed in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section in the manner prescribed in section 446 and the regulations thereunder, if an application to secure such consent is filed on Form 3115 within 180 days after March 23, 1971.

(2) A taxpayer who is already reporting his income in accordance with a method prescribed in paragraph (b)(1)(ii)*(a)* of this section need not secure the consent of the Commissioner to continue to utilize this method. However, such a taxpayer, for all taxable years ending after March 23, 1971, must comply with the requirements of paragraphs (b)(1)(ii)*(a)* (including the

financial reporting requirement) and (d) (relating to an annual information schedule) of this section.

(f) *Cessation of taxpayer's liability.* If a taxpayer has adopted a method prescribed in paragraph (b)(1)(ii) of this section, and if in a taxable year the taxpayer dies, ceases to exist in a transaction other than one to which section 381(a) applies, or his liability under the agreement otherwise ends, then so much of the advance payment as was not includible in his gross income in preceding taxable years shall be included in his gross income for such taxable year.

(g) *Special rule for certain transactions concerning natural resources.* A transaction which is treated as creating a mortgage loan pursuant to section 636 and the regulations thereunder rather than as a sale shall not be considered a ''sale or other disposition'' within the meaning of paragraph (a)(1) of this section. Consequently, any payment received pursuant to such a transaction, which payment would otherwise qualify as an ''advance payment'', will not be treated as an ''advance payment'' for purposes of this section.

[T.D. 7103, 36 FR 5495, Mar. 24, 1971, as amended by T.D. 7397, 41 FR 2641, Jan. 19, 1976; T.D. 8067, 51 FR 393, Jan. 6, 1986; T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2224, Jan. 11, 2001]

§ 1.451–6 Election to include crop insurance proceeds in gross income in the taxable year following the taxable year of destruction or damage.

(a) *In general.* (1) For taxable years ending after December 30, 1969, a taxpayer reporting gross income on the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting may elect to include insurance proceeds received as a result of the destruction of, or damage to, crops in gross income for the taxable year following the taxable year of the destruction or damage, if the taxpayer establishes that, under the taxpayer's normal business practice, the income from those crops would have been included in gross income for any taxable year following the taxable year of the destruction or damage. However, if the taxpayer receives the insurance proceeds in the taxable year following the taxable year of the destruction or damage, the taxpayer shall include the proceeds in gross income for the taxable year of receipt without having to make an election under section 451(d) and this section. For the purposes of this section only, federal payments received as a result of destruction or damage to crops caused by drought, flood, or any other natural disaster, or the inability to plant crops because of such a natural disaster, shall be treated as insurance proceeds received as a result of destruction or damage to crops. The preceding sentence shall apply to payments that are received by the taxpayer after December 31, 1973.

(2) In the case of a taxpayer who receives insurance proceeds as a result of the destruction of, or damage to, two or more specific crops, if such proceeds may, under section 451(d) and this section, be included in gross income for the taxable year following the taxable year of such destruction or damage, and if such taxpayer makes an election under section 451(d) and this section with respect to any portion of such proceeds, then such election will be deemed to cover all of such proceeds which are attributable to crops representing a single trade or business under section 446(d). A separate election must be made with respect to insurance proceeds attributable to each crop which represents a separate trade or business under section 446(d).

(b)(1) *Time and manner of making election.* The election to include in gross income insurance proceeds received as a result of destruction of, or damage to, the taxpayer's crops in the taxable year following the taxable year of such destruction or damage shall be made by means of a statement attached to the taxpayer's return (or an amended return) for the taxable year of destruction or damage. The statement shall include the name and address of the taxpayer (or his duly authorized representative), and shall set forth the following information:

(i) A declaration that the taxpayer is making an election under section 451(d) and this section;

(ii) Identification of the specific crop or crops destroyed or damaged;

(iii) A declaration that under the taxpayer's normal business practice the income derived from the crops which were destroyed or damaged would have been included in this gross income for a taxable year following the taxable year of such destruction or damage;

(iv) The cause of destruction or damage of crops and the date or dates on which such destruction or damage occurred;

(v) The total amount of payments received from insurance carriers, itemized with respect to each specific crop and with respect to the date each payment was received;

(vi) The name(s) of the insurance carrier or carriers from whom payments were received.

(2) *Scope of election.* Once made, an election under section 451(d) is binding for the taxable year for which made unless the district director consents to a revocation of such election. Requests for consent to revoke an election under section 451(d) shall be made by means of a letter to the district director for the district in which the taxpayer is required to file his return, setting forth the taxpayer's name, address, and identification number, the year for which it is desired to revoke the election, and the reasons therefor.

[T.D. 7097, 36 FR 5215, Mar. 18, 1971, as amended by T.D. 7526, 42 FR 64624, Dec. 27, 1977; T.D. 8429, 57 FR 38595, Aug. 26, 1992]

§ 1.451–7 Election relating to livestock sold on account of drought.

(a) *In general.* Section 451(e) provides that for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1975, a taxpayer whose principal trade or business is farming (within the meaning of § 6420 (c)(3)) and who reports taxable income on the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting may elect to defer for one year a certain portion of income. The income which may be deferred is the amount of gain realized during the taxable year from the sale or exchange of that number of livestock sold or exchanged solely on account of a drought which caused an area to be designated as eligible for assistance by the Federal Government (regardless of whether the designation is made by the President or by an agency or department of the Federal Government). That number is equal to the excess of the number of livestock sold or exchanged over the number which would have been sold or exchanged had the taxpayer followed its usual business practices in the absence of such drought. For example, if in the past it has been a taxpayer's practice to sell or exchange annually 400 head of beef cattle but due to qualifying drought conditions 550 head were sold in a given taxable year, only income from the sale of 150 head may qualify for deferral under this section. The election is not available with respect to livestock described in section 1231(b)(3) (relating to cattle, horses (and other livestock) held by the taxpayer for 24 months (12 months) and used for draft, breeding, dairy, or sporting purposes).

(b) *Usual business.* The determination of the number of animals which a taxpayer would have sold if it had followed its usual business practice in the absence of drought will be made in light of all facts and circumstances. In the case of taxpayers who have not established a usual business practice, reliance will be placed upon the usual business practice of similarly situated taxpayers in the same general region as the taxpayer.

(c) *Special rules*—(1) *Connection with drought area.* To qualify under section 451(e) and this section, the livestock need not be raised, and the sale or exchange need not take place, in a drought area. However, the sale or exchange of the livestock must occur solely on account of drought conditions, the existence of which affected the water, grazing, or other requirements of the livestock so as to necessitate their sale or exchange.

(2) *Sale prior to designation of area as eligible for Federal assistance.* The provisions of this section will apply regardless of whether all or a portion of the excess number of animals were sold or exchanged before an area becomes eligible for Federal assistance, so long as the drought which caused such dispositions also caused the area to be designated as eligible for Federal assistance.

(d) *Classifications of livestock with respect to which the election may be made.* The election to have the provisions of section 451(e) apply must be made separately for each broad generic classification of animals (e.g., hogs, sheep, cattle) for which the taxpayer wishes the provisions to apply. Separate elections shall not be made solely by reason of the animals' age, sex, or breed.

(e) *Computation*—(1) *Determination of amount deferred.* The amount of income which may be deferred for a classification of livestock pursuant to this section shall be determined in the following manner. The total amount of income realized from the sale or exchange of all livestock in the classification during the taxable year shall be divided by the total number of all such livestock sold. The resulting quotient shall then be multiplied by the excess number of such livestock sold on account of drought.

(2) *Example.* The provisions of this paragraph may be illustrated by the following example:

Example. A, a calendar year taxpayer, normally sells 100 head of beef cattle a year. As the result of drought conditions existing during 1976, A sells 135 head during that year. A realizes $35,100 of income from the sale of the 135 head. On August 9, 1976, as a result of the drought, the affected area was declared a disaster area thereby eligible for Federal assistance. The amount of income which A may defer until 1977, presuming the other provisions of this section are met, is determined as follows:

$35,100 (total income from sales of beef cattle)/135 (total number of beef cattle sold)×35 (excess number of beef cattle sold, i.e. 135−100)=$9,100 (amount which A may defer until 1977)

(f) *Successive elections.* If a taxpayer makes an election under section 451(e) for successive years, the amount deferred from one year to the next year shall not be deemed to have been received from the sale or exchange of livestock during the later year. In addition, in determining the taxpayer's normal business practice for the later year, earlier years for which an election under section 451(e) was made shall not be considered.

(g) *Time and manner of making election.* The election provided for in this section must be made by the later of (1) the due date for filing the income tax return (determined with regard to any extensions of time granted the taxpayer for filing such return) for the taxable year in which the early sale of livestock occurs, or (2) (the 90th day after the date these regulations are published as a Treasury decision in the FEDERAL REGISTER). The election must be made separately for each taxable year to which it is to apply. It must be made by attaching a statement to the return or an amended return for such taxable year. The statement shall include the name and address of the taxpayer and shall set forth the following information for each classification of livestock for which the election is made:

(1) A declaration that the taxpayer is making an election under section 451(e);

(2) Evidence of the existence of the drought conditions which forced the early sale or exchange of the livestock and the date, if known, on which an area was designated as eligible for assistance by the Federal Government as a result of the drought conditions.

(3) A statement explaining the relationship of the drought area to the taxpayer's early sale or exchange of the livestock;

(4) The total number of animals sold in each of the three preceding years;

(5) The number of animals which would have been sold in the taxable year had the taxpayer followed its normal business practice in the absence of drought;

(6) The total number of animals sold, and the number sold on account of drought, during the taxable year; and

(7) A computation, pursuant to paragraph (e) of this section, of the amount of income to be deferred for each such classification.

(h) *Revocation of election.* Once an election under this section is made for a taxable year, it may be revoked only with the approval of the Commissioner.

(i) *Cross reference.* For provisions relating to the involuntary conversion of livestock sold on account of drought see section 1033(e) and the regulations thereunder.

[T.D. 7526, 42 FR 64624, Dec. 27, 1977]

§§ 1.453–1—1.453–2 [Reserved]

§ 1.453–3 Purchaser evidences of indebtedness payable on demand or readily tradable.

(a) *In general.* A bond or other evidence of indebtedness (hereinafter in this section referred to as an obligation) issued by any person and payable on demand shall not be treated as an evidence of indebtedness of the purchaser in applying section 453(b) to a sale or other disposition of real property or to a casual sale or other casual disposition of personal property. In addition, an obligation issued by a corporation or a government or political subdivision thereof—

(1) With interest coupons attached (whether or not the obligation is readily tradable in an established securities market),

(2) In registered form (other than an obligation issued in registered form which the taxpayer establishes will not be readily tradable in an established securities market), or

(3) In any other form designed to render such obligation readily tradable in an established securities market shall not be treated as an evidence of indebtedness of the purchaser in applying section 453(b) to a sale or other disposition of real property or to a casual sale or other casual disposition of personal property. For purposes of this section, an obligation is to be considered in registered form if it is registered as to principal, interest, or both and if its transfer must be effected by the surrender of the old instrument and either the reissuance by the corporation of the old instrument to the new holder or the issuance by the corporation of a new instrument to the new holder.

(b) *Treatment as payment.* If under section 453(b)(3) an obligation is not treated as an evidence of indebtedness of the purchaser, then—

(1) For purposes of determining whether the payments received in the taxable year of the sale or disposition exceed 30 percent of the selling price, and

(2) For purposes of returning income on the installment method during the taxable year of the sale or disposition or in a subsequent taxable year, the receipt by the seller of such obligation shall be treated as a payment. The rules stated in this paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). On July 1, 1970, A, an individual on the cash method of accounting reporting on a calendar year basis, transferred all of his stock in corporation X (traded on an established securities market and having a fair market value of $1 million) to corporation Y in exchange for 250 of corporation Y's registered bonds (which are traded in an over-the-counter bond market) each with a principal amount and fair market value of $1,000 (with interest payable at the rate of 8 percent per year), and Y's unsecured promissory note, with a principal amount of $750,000. At the time of such exchange A's basis in the corporation X stock is $900,000. The promissory note is payable at the rate of $75,000 annually, due on July 1, of each year following 1970, until the principal balance is paid. The note provides for the payment of interest at the rate of 10 percent per year also payable on July 1 of each year. Under the rule stated in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, the 250 registered bonds of corporation Y are treated as a payment for purposes of the 30 percent test described in section 453(b)(2)(A)(ii). The payment on account of the bonds equals 25 percent of the selling price determined as follows:

$$\frac{\text{\$250,000 payment (i.e., 250 of corporation Y's registered bonds each with a principal amount and fair market value of \$1,000)}}{\text{\$1 million selling price (i.e., \$250,000 of corporation Y's registered bonds plus promissory note of \$750,000)}} = 25 \text{ percent}$$

Since the payments received in the taxable year of the sale do not exceed 30 percent of the selling price and the sales price exceeds $1,000, A may report the income received on the sale of his corporation X stock on the installment method. A elects to report the income on the installment method. The gross profit to be realized when the corporation X stock is fully paid for is 10 percent of the total contract price, computed as follows: $100,000 gross profit (i.e., $1 million contract price less $900,000 basis in corporation X stock) over $1 million contract price. However, since subparagraph (2) of this paragraph also treats the 250 corporation Y registered bonds as a payment for purposes of reporting income, A must include $25,000 (i.e., 10 percent times $250,000) in his gross income for calendar year 1970, the taxable year of sale.

Example (2). Assume the same facts as in example (1). Assume further that on July 1, 1971, corporation Y makes its first installment payment to A under the terms of the unsecured promissory note with 75 more of its $1,000 registered bonds. A must include $7,500 (i.e., 10 percent gross profit percentage times $75,000) in his gross income for calendar year 1971. In addition, A includes the interest payment made by corporation Y on July 1, in his gross income for 1971.

(c) *Payable on demand.* Under section 453(b)(3), an obligation shall be treated as payable on demand only if the obligation is treated as payable on demand under applicable state or local law.

(d) *Designed to be readily tradable in an established securities market*—(1) *In general.* Obligations issued by a corporation or government or political subdivision thereof will be deemed to be in a form designed to render such obligations readily tradable in an established securities market if—

(i) Steps necessary to create a market for them are taken at the time of issuance (or later, if taken pursuant to an expressed or implied agreement or understanding which existed at the time of issuance),

(ii) If they are treated as readily tradable in an established securities market under subparagraph (2) of this paragraph, or

(iii) If they are convertible obligations to which paragraph (e) of this section applies.

(2) *Readily tradable in an established securities market.* An obligation will be treated as readily tradable in an established securities market if—

(i) The obligation is part of an issue or series of issues which are readily tradable in an established securities market, or

(ii) The corporation issuing the obligation has other obligations of a comparable character which are described in subdivision (i) of this subparagraph.

For purposes of subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph, the determination as to whether there exist obligations of a comparable character depends upon the particular facts and circumstances. Factors to be considered in making such determination include, but are not limited to, substantial similarity with respect to the presence and nature of security for the obligation, the number of obligations issued (or to be issued), the number of holders of such obligation, the principal amount of the obligation, and other relevant factors.

(3) *Readily tradable.* For purposes of subparagraph (2)(i) of this paragraph, an obligation shall be treated as readily tradable if it is regularly quoted by brokers or dealers making a market in such obligation or is part of an issue a portion of which is in fact traded in an established securities market.

(4) *Established securities market.* For purposes of this paragraph, the term established securities market includes (i) a national securities exchange which is registered under section 6 of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934 (15 U.S.C. 78f), (ii) an exchange which is exempted from registration under section 5 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1935 (15 U.S.C. 78e) because of its limited volume of transactions, and (iii) any over-the-counter market. For purposes of this subparagraph, an over-the-counter market is reflected by the existence of an interdealer quotation system. An interdealer quotation system is any system of general circulation to brokers and dealers which regularly disseminates quotations of obligations by identified brokers or dealers, other than a quotation sheet prepared and distributed by a broker or dealer in the regular course of his business and containing only quotations of such broker or dealer.

(5) *Examples.* The rules stated in this paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). On June 1, 1971, 25 individuals owning equal interests in a tract of land with a fair market value of $1 million sell the land to corporation Y. The $1 million sales price is represented by 25 bonds issued by corporation Y each having a face value of $40,000. The bonds are not in registered form and do not have interest coupons attached, and, in addition, are payable in 120 equal installments each due on the first business day of each month. In addition, the bonds are negotiable and may be assigned by the holder to any other person. However, the bonds are not quoted by any brokers or dealers who deal in corporate bonds, and, furthermore, there are no comparable obligations of corporation Y (determined with reference to the characteristics set forth in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph) which are so quoted. Therefore, the bonds are not treated as readily tradable in an established securities market. In addition, under the particular facts and circumstances stated, the bonds will not be considered to be in a form designed to render them readily tradeable in an established securities market. Since the bonds are not in registered form, do not have coupons attached, are not in a form designed to render them readily tradable in an established securities market, the receipt of such bonds by the holder is not treated as a payment for purposes of section 453(b), notwithstanding that they are freely assignable.

Example (2). On April 1, 1972, corporation M purchases in a casual sale of personal property a fleet of trucks from corporation N in exchange for corporation M's negotiable notes, not in registered form and without coupons attached. The corporation M notes are comparable to earlier notes issued by corporation M, which notes are quoted in the Eastern Bond section of the National daily quotation sheet, which is an interdealer quotation system. Both issues of notes are unsecured, held by more than 100 holders, have a maturity date of more than 5 years, and were issued for a comparable principal amount. On the basis of these similar characteristics it appears that the latest notes will also be readily tradable. Since an interdealer system reflects an over-the-counter market, the earlier notes are treated as readily tradable in an established securities market. Since the later notes are obligations comparable to the earlier ones, which are treated as readily tradable in an established securities market, the later notes are also treated as readily tradable in an established securities market (whether or not such notes are actually traded).

(e) *Special rule for convertible securities*—(1) *General rule.* For purposes of paragraph (d)(1) of this section, if an obligation contains a right whereby the holder of such obligation may convert it directly or indirectly into another obligation which would be treated as a payment under paragraph (b) of this section or may convert it directly or indirectly into stock which would be treated as readily tradable or designed to be readily tradable in an established securities market under paragraph (d) of this section, the convertible obligation shall be considered to be in a form designed to render such obligation readily tradable in an established securities market unless such obligation is convertible only at a substantial discount. In determining whether the stock or obligation, into which an obligation is convertible, is readily tradable or designed to be readily tradable in an established securities market, the rules stated in paragraph (d) of this section shall apply, and for purposes of such paragraph (d) if such obligation is convertible into stock then the term ''stock'' shall be substituted for the term ''obligation'' wherever it appears in such paragraph (d).

(2) *Substantial discount rule.* Whether an obligation is convertible at a substantial discount depends upon the particular facts and circumstances. A substantial discount shall be considered to exist if at the time the convertible obligation is issued, the fair market value of the stock or obligation into which the obligation is convertible is less than 80 percent of the fair market value of the obligation (determined by taking into account all relevant factors, including proper discount to reflect the fact that the convertible obligation is not readily tradable in an established securities market and any additional consideration required to be paid by the taxpayer). Also, if a privilege to convert an obligation into stock or an obligation which is readily tradable in an established securities market may not be exercised within a period of 1 year from the date the obligation is issued, a substantial discount shall be considered to exist.

(f) *Effective date.* The provisions of this section shall apply to sales or other dispositions occurring after May 27, 1969, which are not made pursuant to a binding written contract entered into on or before such date. No inference shall be drawn from this section as to any question of law concerning the application of section 453 to sales or other dispositions occurring on or before May 27, 1969.

[T.D. 7197, 37 FR 13532, July 11, 1972]

§ 1.453–4 Sale of real property involving deferred periodic payments.

(a) *In general.* Sales of real property involving deferred payments include (1) agreements of purchase and sale which contemplate that a conveyance is not to be made at the outset, but only after all or a substantial portion of the selling price has been paid, and (2) sales in which there is an immediate transfer of title, the vendor being protected by a mortgage or other lien as to deferred payments.

(b) *Classes of sales.* Such sales, under either paragraph (a) (1) or (2) of this section, fall into two classes when considered with respect to the terms of sale, as follows:

(1) Sales of real property which may be accounted for on the installment method, that is, sales of real property in which (i) there are no payments during the taxable year of the sale or (ii) the payments in such taxable year (exclusive of evidences of indebtedness of the purchaser) do not exceed 30 percent of the selling price, or

(2) Deferred-payment sales of real property in which the payments received in cash or property other than evidences of indebtedness of the purchaser during the taxable year in which the sale is made exceed 30 percent of the selling price.

(c) *Determination of ''selling price''.* In the sale of mortgaged property the amount of the mortgage, whether the property is merely taken subject to the mortgage or whether the mortgage is assumed by the purchaser, shall, for the purpose of determining whether a sale is on the installment plan, be included as a part of the ''selling price''; and for the purpose of determining the payments and the total contract price as those terms are used in section 453, and §§ 1.453–1 through 1.453–7, the amount of such mortgage shall be included only to the extent that it exceeds the basis of the property. The term ''payments'' does not include amounts received by the vendor in the year of sale from the disposition to a third person of notes given by the vendee as part of the purchase price which are due and payable in subsequent years. Commissions and other selling expenses paid or incurred by the vendor shall not reduce the amount of the payments, the total contract price, or the selling price.

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11715, Nov. 26, 1960]

§ 1.453–5 Sale of real property treated on installment method.

(a) *In general.* In any transaction described in paragraph (b)(1) of § 1.453–4, that is, sales of real property in which there are no payments during the year of sale or the payments in that year do not exceed 30 percent of the selling price, the vendor may return as income from each such transaction in any taxable year that proportion of the installment payments actually received in that year which the gross profit (as described in paragraph (b) of § 1.453–1) realized or to be realized when the property is paid for bears to the total contract price. In any case, the sale of each lot or parcel of a subdivided tract must be treated as a separate transaction and gain or loss computed accordingly. (See paragraph (a) of § 1.61–6.)

(b) *Defaults and repossessions*—(1) *Effective date.* This paragraph shall apply only with respect to taxable years beginning before September 3, 1964, in respect of which an election has not been properly made to have the provisions of section 1038 apply. For rules applicable to taxable years beginning after September 2, 1964, and for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1957, to which such an election applies, see section 1038, and §§ 1.1038–1 through 1.1038–3.

(2) *Gain or loss on reacquisition of property.* If the purchaser of real property on the installment plan defaults in any of his payments, and the vendor returning income on the installment method reacquires the property sold, whether title thereto had been retained by the vendor or transferred to the purchaser, gain or loss for the year in which the reacquisition occurs is to be computed upon any installment obligations of the purchaser which are satisfied or discharged upon the reacquisition or are applied by the vendor to the purchase or bid price of the property. Such gain or loss is to be measured by the difference between the fair market value at the date of reacquisition of the property reacquired (including the fair market value of any fixed improvements placed on the property by the purchaser) and the basis in the hands of the vendor of the obligations of the purchaser which are so satisfied, discharged, or applied, with proper adjustment for any other amounts realized or costs incurred in connection with the reacquisition.

(3) *Fair market value of reacquired property.* If the property reacquired is bid in by the vendor at a foreclosure sale, the fair market value of the property shall be presumed to be the purchase or bid price thereof in the absence of clear and convincing proof to the contrary.

(4) *Basis of obligations.* The basis in the hands of the vendor of the obligations of the purchaser satisfied, discharged, or applied upon the reacquisition of the property will be the excess of the face value of such obligations over an amount equal to the income which would be returnable were the obligations paid in full. For definition of the basis of an installment obligation, see section 453(d)(2) and paragraph (b)(2) of §1.453–9.

(5) *Bad debt deduction.* No deduction for a bad debt shall in any case be taken on account of any portion of the obligations of the purchaser which are treated by the vendor as not having been satisfied, discharged, or applied upon the reacquisition of the property, unless it is clearly shown that after the property was reacquired the purchaser remained liable for such portion; and in no event shall the amount of the deduction exceed the basis in the hands of the vendor of the portion of the obligations with respect to which the purchaser remained liable after the reacquisition. See section 166 and the regulations thereunder.

(6) *Basis of reacquired property.* If the property reacquired is subsequently sold, the basis for determining gain or loss is the fair market value of the property at the date of reacquisition, including the fair market value of any fixed improvements placed on the property by the purchaser.

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11716, Nov. 26, 1960, as amended by T.D. 6916, 32 FR 5923, Apr. 13, 1967]

§ 1.453–6 Deferred payment sale of real property not on installment method.

(a) *Value of obligations.* (1) In transactions included in paragraph (b)(2) of §1.453–4, that is, sales of real property involving deferred payments in which the payments received during the year of sale exceed 30 percent of the selling price, the obligations of the purchaser received by the vendor are to be considered as an amount realized to the extent of their fair market value in ascertaining the profit or loss from the transaction. Such obligations, however, are not considered in determining whether the payments during the year of sale exceed 30 percent of the selling price.

(2) If the obligations received by the vendor have no fair market value, the payments in cash or other property having a fair market value shall be applied against and reduce the basis of the property sold and, if in excess of such basis, shall be taxable to the extent of the excess. Gain or loss is realized when the obligations are disposed of or satisfied, the amount thereof being the difference between the reduced basis as provided in the preceding sentence and the amount realized therefor. Only in rare and extraordinary cases does property have no fair market value.

(b) *Repossession of property where title is retained by vendor*—(1) *Gain or loss on repossession.* If the vendor in sales referred to in paragraph (a) of this section has retained title to the property and the purchaser defaults in any of his payments, and the vendor repossesses the property, the difference between—

(i) The entire amount of the payments actually received on the contract and retained by the vendor plus the fair market value at the time of repossession of fixed improvements placed on the property by the purchaser, and

(ii) The sum of the profits previously returned as income in connection therewith and an amount representing what would have been a proper adjustment for exhaustion, wear and tear, obsolescence, amortization, and depletion of the property during the period the property was in the hands of the purchaser had the sale not been made, will constitute gain or loss, as the case may be, to the vendor for the year in which the property is repossessed.

(2) *Basis of repossessed property.* The basis of the property described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph in the hands of the vendor will be the original basis at the time of the sale plus the fair market value at the time of repossession of fixed improvements placed on the property by the purchaser, except that, with respect to repossessions occurring after September 18, 1958, the basis of the property shall be reduced by what would have been a proper adjustment for exhaustion, wear and tear, obsolescence, amortization, and

depletion of the property during the period the property was in the hands of the purchaser if the sale had not been made.

(c) *Reacquisition of property where title is transferred to purchaser*—(1) *Gain or loss on reacquisition.* If the vendor in sales described in paragraph (a) of this section has previously transferred title to the purchaser, and the purchaser defaults in any of his payments, and the vendor accepts a voluntary reconveyance of the property, in partial or full satisfaction of the unpaid portion of the purchase price, the receipt of the property so reacquired, to the extent of its fair market value at that time, including the fair market value of fixed improvements placed on the property by the purchaser, shall be considered as the receipt of payment on the obligations satisfied. If the fair market value of the property is greater than the basis of the obligations of the purchaser so satisfied (generally, such basis being the fair market value of such obligations previously recognized in computing income), the excess constitutes ordinary income. If the value of such property is less than the basis of such obligations, the difference may be deducted as a bad debt if uncollectible, except that, if the obligations satisfied are securities (as defined in section 165(g)(2)(C)), any gain or loss resulting from the transaction is a capital gain or loss subject to the provisions of sections 1201 through 1241.

(2) *Basis of reacquired property.* If the reacquired property described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph is subsequently sold, the basis for determining gain or loss is the fair market value of the property at the date of reacquisition, including the fair market value of the fixed improvements placed on the property by the purchaser. See section 166 and the regulations thereunder with respect to property reacquired by the vendor in a foreclosure proceeding.

(d) *Effective date.* Paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section shall apply only with respect to taxable years beginning before September 3, 1964, in respect of which an election has not been properly made to have the provisions of section 1038 apply. For rules applicable to taxable years beginning after September 2, 1964, and for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1957, to which such an election applies, see section 1038, and §§ 1.1038–1 through 1.1038–3.

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11716, Nov. 26, 1960, as amended by T.D. 6916, 32 FR 5923, Apr. 13, 1967]

§§ 1.453–7—1.453–8 [Reserved]

§ 1.453–9 Gain or loss on disposition of installment obligations.

(a) *In general.* Subject to the exceptions contained in section 453(d)(4) and paragraph (c) of this section, the entire amount of gain or loss resulting from any disposition or satisfaction of installment obligations, computed in accordance with section 453(d), is recognized in the taxable year of such disposition or satisfaction and shall be considered as resulting from the sale or exchange of the property in respect of which the installment obligation was received by the taxpayer.

(b) *Computation of gain or loss.* (1) The amount of gain or loss resulting under paragraph (a) of this section is the difference between the basis of the obligation and (i) the amount realized, in the case of satisfaction at other than face value or in the case of a sale or exchange, or (ii) the fair market value of the obligation at the time of disposition, if such disposition is other than by sale or exchange.

(2) The basis of an installment obligation shall be the excess of the face value of the obligation over an amount equal to the income which would be returnable were the obligation satisfied in full.

(3) The application of subparagraphs (1) and (2) of this paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). In 1960 the M Corporation sold a piece of unimproved real estate to B for $20,000. The company acquired the property in 1948 at a cost of $10,000. During 1960 the company received $5,000 cash and vendee's notes for the remainder of the selling price, or $15,000, payable in subsequent years. In 1962, before the vendee made any further payments, the company sold the notes for $13,000 in cash. The corporation makes its returns on the calendar year basis. The income to be reported for 1962 is $5,500, computed as follows:

Proceeds of sale of notes	$13,000

Selling price of property	$20,000
Cost of property	10,000
Total profit	10,000
Total contract price	20,000
Percent of profit, or proportion of each payment returnable as income, $10,000 divided by $20,000, 50 percent.	
Face value of notes	15,000
Amount of income returnable were the notes satisfied in full, 50 percent of $15,000	7,500
Basis of obligation—excess of face value of notes over amount of income returnable were the notes satisfied in full	7,500
Taxable income to be reported for 1962	5,500

Example (2). Suppose in example (1) the M Corporation, instead of selling the notes, distributed them in 1962 to its shareholders as a dividend, and at the time of such distribution, the fair market value of the notes was $14,000. The income to be reported for 1962 is $6,500, computed as follows:

Fair market value of notes	$14,000
Basis of obligation—excess of face value of notes over amount of income returnable were the notes satisfied in full (computed as in example (1))	7,500
Taxable income to be reported for 1962	6,500

(c) *Disposition from which no gain or loss is recognized.* (1)(i) Under section 453(d)(4)(A), no gain or loss shall be recognized to a distributing corporation with respect to the distribution made after November 13, 1966, of installment obligations if *(a)* the distribution is made pursuant to a plan for the complete liquidation of a subsidiary under section 332, and *(b)* the basis of the such obligations in the hands of the distributee is determined under section 334(b)(1).

(ii) Under section 453(d)(4)(B), no gain or loss shall be recognized to a distributing corporation with respect to the distribution of installment obligations if the distribution is made, pursuant to a plan for the complete liquidation of a corporation which meets the requirements of section 337, under conditions whereby no gain or loss would have been recognized to the corporation had such installment obligations been sold or exchanged on the day of the distribution. The preceding sentence shall not apply to the extent that under section 453(d)(1) gain to the distributing corporation would be considered as gain to which section 341(f)(2), 617(d)(1), 1245(a)(1), 1250(a)(1), 1251(c)(1), 1252(a)(1), or 1254(a)(1) applies, computed under the principles of the regulations under such provisions. See paragraph (d) of §1.1245–6, paragraph (c)(6) of §1.1250–1, paragraph (e)(6) of §1.1251–1, paragraph (d)(3) of §1.1252–1, and paragraph (d) of §1.1254–1.

(2) Where the Code provides for exceptions to the recognition of gain or loss in the case of certain dispositions, no gain or loss shall result under section 453(d) in the case of a disposition of an installment obligation. Such exceptions include: Certain transfers to corporations under sections 351 and 361; contributions of property to a partnership by a partner under section 721; and distributions by a partnership to a partner under section 731 (except as provided by section 736 and section 751).

(3) Any amount received by a person in payment or settlement of an installment obligation acquired in a transaction described in subparagraphs (1) or (2) of this paragraph (other than an amount received by a stockholder with respect to an installment obligation distributed to him pursuant to section 337) shall be considered to have the character it would have had in the hands of the person from whom such installment obligation was acquired.

(d) *Carryover of installment method.* For the treatment of income derived from installment obligations received in transactions to which section 381 (a) is applicable, see section 381(c)(8) and the regulations thereunder.

(e) *Installment obligations transmitted at death.* Where installment obligations are transmitted at death, see section 691(a)(4) and the regulations thereunder for the treatment of amounts considered income in respect of a decedent.

(f) *Losses.* See subchapter P (section 1201 and following), chapter 1 of the Code, as to the limitation on capital losses sustained by corporations and the limitation as to both capital gains and capital losses of individuals.

(g) *Disposition of installment obligations to life insurance companies.* (1) Notwithstanding the provisions of section 453(d)(4) and paragraph (c) of this section or any provision of subtitle A relating to the nonrecognition of gain, the entire amount of any gain realized on the disposition of an installment obligation by any person, other than a life insurance company (as defined in section 801(a) and paragraph (b) of §1.801–3), to a life insurance company or to a partnership of which a life insurance company is a partner shall be recognized and treated in accordance with section 453(d)(1) and paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section. If a corporation which is a life insurance company for the taxable year was a corporation which was not a life insurance company for the preceding taxable year, such corporation shall be treated, for purposes of section 453(d)(1) and this paragraph, as having transferred to a life insurance company, on the last day of the preceding taxable year, all installment obligations which it held on such last day. The gain, if any, realized by reason of the installment obligations being so transferred shall be recognized and treated in accordance with section 453(d)(1) and paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section. Similarly, a partnership of which a life insurance company becomes a partner shall be treated, for purposes of section 453(d)(1) and this paragraph, as having transferred to a life insurance company, on the last day of the preceding taxable year of such partnership, all installment obligations which it holds at the time such life insurance company becomes a partner. The gain, if any, realized by reason of the installment obligations being so transferred shall be recognized and treated in accordance with section 453(d)(1) and paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section.

(2) The provisions of section 453(d)(5) and subparagraph (1) of this paragraph shall not apply to losses sustained in connection with the disposition of installment obligations to a life insurance company.

(3) For the effective date of the provisions of section 453(d)(5) and this paragraph, see paragraph (f) of §1.453–10.

(4) Application of the provisions of this paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). A, an individual, in a transaction to which section 351 applies, transfers in 1961 certain assets, including installment obligations, to a new corporation, X, which qualifies as a life insurance company (as defined in section 801(a)) for the year 1961. A makes his return on the calendar year basis. Section 453(d)(5) provides that the nonrecognition provisions of section 351 will not apply to the installment obligations transferred by A to X Corporation. Therefore, the entire amount of any gain realized by A on the transfer of the installment obligations shall be recognized in 1961, with the amount of any such gain computed in accordance with the provisions of section 453(d)(1) and paragraph (b) of this section.

Example (2). The M Corporation did not qualify as a life insurance company (as defined in section 801(a)) for the taxable year 1958. On December 31, 1958, it held $60,000 of installment obligations. The M Corporation qualified as a life insurance company for the taxable year 1959. Accordingly, the M Corporation is treated as having transferred to a life insurance company, on December 31, 1958, the $60,000 of installment obligations it held on such date. The gain, if any, realized by M by reason of such installment obligations being so transferred shall be recognized in the taxable year 1958, with the amount of any such gain computed in accordance with the provisions of section 453(d)(1) and paragraph (b) of this section.

Example (3). During its taxable year 1958, none of the partners of the N partnership qualified as a life insurance company (as defined in section 801(a)). The N partnership held $30,000 of installment obligations on December 31, 1958. On July 30, 1959, the O Corporation, a life insurance company (as defined in section 801(a)), became a partner in the partnership. The N partnership held $50,000 of installment obligations on July 30, 1959. Pursuant to section 453(d)(5), the N partnership is treated as having transferred to a life insurance company, on December 31, 1958, the $50,000 of installment obligations it held on July 30, 1959. The gain, if any, realized by the N partnership by reason of such installment obligations being so transferred shall be recognized in the taxable year 1958, with the amount of any such gain computed in accordance with the provisions of section 453(d)(1) and paragraph (b) of this section.

Example (4). In 1960, the P Corporation, in a reorganization qualifying under section 368(a), transferred certain assets (including installment obligations) to the R Corporation, a life insurance company as defined in section 801(a). P realized a loss upon the transfer of the installment obligations, which was not recognized under section 361. Pursuant to subparagraph (2) of paragraph (c) of this section, no loss with respect to the transfer of these obligations will be recognized to P under section 453(d)(1).

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11718, Nov. 26, 1960, as amended by T.D. 6590, 27 FR 1319, Feb. 13, 1962; T.D. 7084, 36 FR 267, Jan. 8, 1971; T.D. 7418, 41 FR 18812, May 7, 1976; T.D. 8586, 60 FR 2500, Jan. 10, 1995]

§ 1.453–10 Effective date.

(a) Except as provided in this section, the provisions of section 453 and §§1.453–1 through 1.453–9 shall apply to taxable years beginning after December 31, 1953, and ending after August 16, 1954.

(b) The provisions of paragraphs (a) (2) and (3), (b), and (c) of §1.453–8 shall apply to taxable years ending after December 17, 1958.

(c) Under the provisions of sections 453(b) and 7851(a)(1)(C), section 453(b)(1) and the regulations with respect thereto shall also apply—

(1) To a sale or other disposition during a taxable year beginning before January 1, 1954, only if the income was returnable (by reason of section 44(b) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939) on the basis and in the manner prescribed in section 44(a) of such code.

(2) To a sale or other disposition during a taxable year beginning after December 31, 1953, and ending before August 17, 1954, though such taxable year is subject to the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939.

(d) Under the provisions of sections 453(c)(1)(B) and 7851(a)(1)(C) section 453(c) and the regulations with respect thereto shall also apply to taxable years beginning after December 31, 1953, and ending before August 17, 1954, though such taxable years are subject to the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code of 1939.

(e) The provisions of paragraph (b)(3) of §1.453–6 shall apply to repossessions occurring after December 18, 1958.

(f) The provisions of section 453(d)(5) and paragraph (g) of §1.453–9 shall apply to taxable years ending after December 31, 1957, but only as to transfers or other dispositions of installment obligations occurring after such date.

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11718, Nov. 26, 1960, as amended by T.D. 6590, 27 FR 1320, Feb. 13, 1962; T.D. 6682, 28 FR 11177, Oct. 18, 1963]

§ 1.453–11 Installment obligations received from a liquidating corporation.

(a) *In general*—(1) *Overview*. Except as provided in section 453(h)(1)(C) (relating to installment sales of depreciable property to certain closely related persons), a qualifying shareholder (as defined in paragraph (b) of this section) who receives a qualifying installment obligation (as defined in paragraph (c) of this section) in a liquidation that satisfies section 453(h)(1)(A) treats the receipt of payments in respect of the obligation, rather than the receipt of the obligation itself, as a receipt of payment for the shareholder's stock. The shareholder reports the payments received on the installment method unless the shareholder elects otherwise in accordance with §15a.453–1(d) of this chapter.

(2) *Coordination with other provisions*—(i) *Deemed sale of stock for installment obligation*. Except as specifically provided in section 453(h)(1)(C), a qualifying shareholder treats a qualifying installment obligation, for all purposes of the Internal Revenue Code, as if the obligation is received by the shareholder from the person issuing the obligation in exchange for the shareholder's stock in the liquidating corporation. For example, if the stock of a corporation that is liquidating is traded on an established securities market, an installment obligation distributed to a shareholder of the corporation in exchange for the shareholder's stock does not qualify for installment reporting pursuant to section 453(k)(2).

(ii) *Special rules to account for the qualifying installment obligation*—(A) *Issue price*. A qualifying installment obligation is treated by a qualifying shareholder as newly issued on the date of the distribution. The issue price of the qualifying installment obligation on that date is equal to the sum of the adjusted issue price of the obligation on the date of the distribution (as determined under §1.1275–1(b)) and the amount of any qualified stated interest (as defined in §1.1273–1(c)) that has accrued prior to the distribution but that is not payable until after the distribution. For purposes of the preceding sentence, if the qualifying installment obligation is subject to §1.446–2 (e.g., a debt instrument that has unstated interest under section 483), the adjusted issue price of the obligation is determined under §1.446–2(c) and (d).

(B) *Variable rate debt instrument*. If the qualifying installment obligation is a variable rate debt instrument (as defined in §1.1275–5), the shareholder uses the equivalent fixed rate debt instrument (within the meaning of §1.1275–5(e)(3)(ii)) constructed for the qualifying installment obligation as of the date the obligation was issued to the liquidating corporation to determine the accruals of original issue discount, if any, and interest on the obligation.

(3) *Liquidating distributions treated as selling price*. All amounts distributed or treated as distributed to a qualifying shareholder incident to the liquidation, including cash, the issue price of qualifying installment obligations as determined under paragraph (a)(2)(ii)(A) of this section, and the fair market value of other property (including obligations that are not qualifying installment obligations) are considered as having been received by the shareholder as the selling price (as defined in §15a.453–1(b)(2)(ii) of this chapter) for the shareholder's stock in the liquidating corporation. For the proper method of reporting liquidating distributions received in more than one taxable year of a shareholder, see paragraph (d) of this section. An election not to report on the installment method an installment obligation received in the liquidation applies to all distributions received in the liquidation.

(4) *Assumption of corporate liability by shareholders*. For purposes of this section, if in the course of a liquidation a shareholder assumes secured or unsecured liabilities of the liquidating corporation, or receives property from the corporation subject to such liabilities (including any tax liabilities incurred by the corporation on the distribution), the amount of the liabilities is added to the shareholder's basis in the stock of the liquidating corporation. These additions to basis do not affect the shareholder's holding period for the stock. These liabilities do not reduce the amounts received in computing the selling price.

(5) *Examples*. The provisions of this paragraph (a) are illustrated by the following examples. Except as otherwise provided, assume in each example that A, an individual who is a calendar-year taxpayer, owns all of the stock of T corporation. A's adjusted tax basis in that stock is $100,000. On February 1, 1998, T, an accrual method taxpayer, adopts a plan of complete liquidation that satisfies section 453(h)(1)(A) and immediately sells all of its assets to unrelated B corporation in a single transaction. The examples are as follows:

Example 1. (i) The stated purchase price for T's assets is $3,500,000. In consideration for the sale, B makes a down payment of $500,000 and issues a 10-year installment obligation with a stated principal amount of $3,000,000. The obligation provides for interest payments of $150,000 on January 31 of each year, with the total principal amount due at maturity.

(ii) Assume that for purposes of section 1274, the test rate on February 1, 1998, is 8 percent, compounded semi-annually. Also assume that a semi-annual accrual period is used. Under §1.1274–2, the issue price of the obligation on February 1, 1998, is $2,368,450. Accordingly, the obligation has $631,550 of original issue discount ($3,000,000–$2,368,450). Between February 1 and July 31, $19,738 of original issue discount and $75,000 of qualified stated interest accrue with respect to the obligation and are taken into account by T.

(iii) On July 31, 1998, T distributes the installment obligation to A in exchange for A's stock. No other property is ever distributed to A. On January 31, 1999, A receives the first annual payment of $150,000 from B.

(iv) When the obligation is distributed to A on July 31, 1998, it is treated as if the obligation is received by A in an installment sale of shares directly to B on that date. Under §1.1275–1(b), the adjusted issue price of the obligation on that date is $2,388,188 (original issue price of $2,368,450 plus accrued original issue discount of $19,738). Accordingly, the issue price of the obligation under paragraph (a)(2)(ii)(A) of this section is $2,463,188, the sum of the adjusted issue price of the obligation on that date ($2,388,188) and the amount of accrued but unpaid qualified stated interest ($75,000).

(v) The selling price and contract price of A's stock in T is $2,463,188, and the gross profit is $2,363,188 ($2,463,188 selling price less A's adjusted tax basis of $100,000). A's gross profit ratio is thus 96 percent (gross profit of $2,363,188 divided by total contract price of $2,463,188).

(vi) Under §§1.446–2(e)(1) and 1.1275–2(a), $98,527 of the $150,000 payment is treated as a payment of the interest and original issue discount that accrued on the obligation from July 31, 1998, to January 31, 1999 ($75,000 of qualified stated interest and $23,527 of original issue discount). The balance of the payment ($51,473) is treated as a payment of principal. A's gain recognized in 1999 is $49,414 (96 percent of $51,473).

Example 2. (i) T owns Blackacre, unimproved real property, with an adjusted tax basis of $700,000. Blackacre is subject to a mortgage (underlying mortgage) of $1,100,000. A is not personally liable on the underlying mortgage and the T shares held by A are not encumbered by the underlying mortgage. The other assets of T consist of $400,000 of cash and $600,000 of accounts receivable attributable to sales of inventory in the ordinary course of business. The unsecured liabilities of T total $900,000.

(ii) On February 1, 1998, T adopts a plan of complete liquidation complying with section 453(h)(1)(A), and promptly sells Blackacre to B for a 4-year mortgage note (bearing adequate stated interest and otherwise meeting all of the requirements of section 453) in the face amount of $4 million. Under the agreement between T and B, T (or its successor) is to continue to make principal and interest payments on the underlying mortgage. Immediately thereafter, T completes its liquidation by distributing to A its remaining cash of $400,000 (after payment of T's tax liabilities), accounts receivable of $600,000, and the $4 million B note. A assumes T's $900,000 of unsecured liabilities and receives the distributed property subject to the obligation to make payments on the $1,100,000 underlying mortgage. A receives no payments from B on the B note during 1998.

(iii) Unless A elects otherwise, the transaction is reported by A on the installment method. The selling price is $5 million (cash of $400,000, accounts receivable of $600,000, and the B note of $4 million). The total contract price also is $5 million. A's adjusted tax basis in the T shares, initially $100,000, is increased by the $900,000 of unsecured T liabilities assumed by A and by the obligation (subject to which A takes the distributed property) to make payments on the $1,100,000 underlying mortgage on Blackacre, for an aggregate adjusted tax basis of $2,100,000. Accordingly, the gross profit is $2,900,000 (selling price of $5 million less aggregate adjusted tax basis of $2,100,000). The gross profit ratio is 58 percent (gross profit of $2,900,000 divided by the total contract price of $5 million). The 1998 payments to A are $1 million ($400,000 cash plus $600,000 receivables) and A recognizes gain in 1998 of $580,000 (58 percent of $1 million).

(iv) In 1999, A receives payment from B on the B note of $1 million (exclusive of interest). A's gain recognized in 1999 is $580,000 (58 percent of $1 million).

(b) *Qualifying shareholder.* For purposes of this section, *qualifying shareholder* means a shareholder to which, with respect to the liquidating distribution, section 331 applies. For example, a creditor that receives a distribution from a liquidating corporation, in exchange for the creditor's claim, is not a qualifying shareholder as a result of that distribution regardless of whether the liquidation satisfies section 453(h)(1)(A).

(c) *Qualifying installment obligation*—(1) *In general.* For purposes of this section, *qualifying installment obligation* means an installment obligation (other than an evidence of indebtedness described in §15a.453–1(e) of this chapter, relating to obligations that are payable on demand or are readily tradable) acquired in a sale or exchange of corporate assets by a liquidating corporation during the 12-month period beginning on the date the plan of liquidation is adopted. See paragraph (c)(4) of this section for an exception for installment obligations acquired in respect of certain sales of inventory. Also see paragraph (c)(5) of this section for an exception for installment obligations attributable to sales of certain property that do not generally qualify for installment method treatment.

(2) *Corporate assets.* Except as provided in section 453(h)(1)(C), in paragraph (c)(4) of this section (relating to certain sales of inventory), and in paragraph (c)(5) of this section (relating to certain tax avoidance transactions), the nature of the assets sold by, and the tax consequences to, the selling corporation do not affect whether an installment obligation is a qualifying installment obligation. Thus, for example, the fact that the fair market value of an asset is less than the adjusted basis of that asset in the hands of the corporation; or that the sale of an asset will subject the corporation to depreciation recapture (e.g., under section 1245 or section 1250); or that the assets of a trade or business sold by the corporation for an installment obligation include depreciable property, certain marketable securities, accounts receivable, installment obligations, or cash; or that the distribution of assets to the shareholder is or is not taxable to the corporation under sections 336 and 453B, does not affect whether installment obligations received in exchange for those assets are treated as qualifying installment obligations by

the shareholder. However, an obligation received by the corporation in exchange for cash, in a transaction unrelated to a sale or exchange of noncash assets by the corporation, is not treated as a qualifying installment obligation.

(3) *Installment obligations distributed in liquidations described in section 453(h)(1)(E)*—(i) *In general*. In the case of a liquidation to which section 453(h)(1)(E) (relating to certain liquidating subsidiary corporations) applies, a qualifying installment obligation acquired in respect of a sale or exchange by the liquidating subsidiary corporation will be treated as a qualifying installment obligation if distributed by a controlling corporate shareholder (within the meaning of section 368(c)) to a qualifying shareholder. The preceding sentence is applied successively to each controlling corporate shareholder, if any, above the first controlling corporate shareholder.

(ii) *Examples*. The provisions of this paragraph (c)(3) are illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1. (i) A, an individual, owns all of the stock of T corporation, a C corporation. T has an operating division and three wholly-owned subsidiaries, X, Y, and Z. On February 1, 1998, T, Y, and Z all adopt plans of complete liquidation.

(ii) On March 1, 1998, the following sales are made to unrelated purchasers: T sells the assets of its operating division to B for cash and an installment obligation. T sells the stock of X to C for an installment obligation. Y sells all of its assets to D for an installment obligation. Z sells all of its assets to E for cash. The B, C, and D installment obligations bear adequate stated interest and meet the requirements of section 453.

(iii) In June 1998, Y and Z completely liquidate, distributing their respective assets (the D installment obligation and cash) to T. In July 1998, T completely liquidates, distributing to A cash and the installment obligations respectively issued by B, C, and D. The liquidation of T is a liquidation to which section 453(h) applies and the liquidations of Y and Z into T are liquidations to which section 332 applies.

(iv) Because T is in control of Y (within the meaning of section 368(c)), the D obligation acquired by Y is treated as acquired by T pursuant to section 453(h)(1)(E). A is a qualifying shareholder and the installment obligations issued by B, C, and D are qualifying installment obligations. Unless A elects otherwise, A reports the transaction on the installment method as if the cash and installment obligations had been received in an installment sale of the stock of T corporation. Under section 453B(d), no gain or loss is recognized by Y on the distribution of the D installment obligation to T. Under sections 453B(a) and 336, T recognizes gain or loss on the distribution of the B, C, and D installment obligations to A in exchange for A's stock.

Example 2. (i) A, a cash-method individual taxpayer, owns all of the stock of P corporation, a C corporation. P owns 30 percent of the stock of Q corporation. The balance of the Q stock is owned by unrelated individuals. On February 1, 1998, P adopts a plan of complete liquidation and sells all of its property, other than its Q stock, to B, an unrelated purchaser for cash and an installment obligation bearing adequate stated interest. On March 1, 1998, Q adopts a plan of complete liquidation and sells all of its property to an unrelated purchaser, C, for cash and installment obligations. Q immediately distributes the cash and installment obligations to its shareholders in completion of its liquidation. Promptly thereafter, P liquidates, distributing to A cash, the B installment obligation, and a C installment obligation that P received in the liquidation of Q.

(ii) In the hands of A, the B installment obligation is a qualifying installment obligation. In the hands of P, the C installment obligation was a qualifying installment obligation. However, in the hands of A, the C installment obligation is not treated as a qualifying installment obligation because P owned only 30 percent of the stock of Q. Because P did not own the requisite 80 percent stock interest in Q, P was not a controlling corporate shareholder of Q (within the meaning of section 368(c)) immediately before the liquidation. Therefore, section 453(h)(1)(E) does not apply. Thus, in the hands of A, the C obligation is considered to be a third-party note (not a purchaser's evidence of indebtedness) and is treated as a payment to A in the year of distribution. Accordingly, for 1998, A reports as payment the cash and the fair market value of the C obligation distributed to A in the liquidation of P.

(iii) Because P held 30 percent of the stock of Q, section 453B(d) is inapplicable to P. Under sections 453B(a) and 336, accordingly, Q recognizes gain or loss on the distribution of the C obligation. P also recognizes gain or loss on the distribution of the B and C installment obligations to A in exchange for A's stock. See sections 453B and 336.

(4) *Installment obligations attributable to certain sales of inventory*—(i) *In general*. An installment obligation acquired by a corporation in a liquidation that satisfies section 453(h)(1)(A) in respect of a broken lot of inventory is

not a qualifying installment obligation. If an installment obligation is acquired in respect of a broken lot of inventory and other assets, only the portion of the installment obligation acquired in respect of the broken lot of inventory is not a qualifying installment obligation. The portion of the installment obligation attributable to other assets is a qualifying installment obligation. For purposes of this section, the term *broken lot of inventory* means inventory property that is sold or exchanged other than in bulk to one person in one transaction involving substantially all of the inventory property attributable to a trade or business of the corporation. See paragraph (c)(4)(ii) of this section for rules for determining what portion of an installment obligation is not a qualifying installment obligation and paragraph (c)(4)(iii) of this section for rules determining the application of payments on an installment obligation only a portion of which is a qualifying installment obligation.

(ii) *Rules for determining nonqualifying portion of an installment obligation.* If a broken lot of inventory is sold to a purchaser together with other corporate assets for consideration consisting of an installment obligation and either cash, other property, the assumption of (or taking property subject to) corporate liabilities by the purchaser, or some combination thereof, the installment obligation is treated as having been acquired in respect of a broken lot of inventory only to the extent that the fair market value of the broken lot of inventory exceeds the sum of unsecured liabilities assumed by the purchaser, secured liabilities which encumber the broken lot of inventory and are assumed by the purchaser or to which the broken lot of inventory is subject, and the sum of the cash and fair market value of other property received. This rule applies solely for the purpose of determining the portion of the installment obligation (if any) that is attributable to the broken lot of inventory.

(iii) *Application of payments.* If, by reason of the application of paragraph (c)(4)(ii) of this section, a portion of an installment obligation is not a qualifying installment obligation, then for purposes of determining the amount of gain to be reported by the shareholder under section 453, payments on the obligation (other than payments of qualified stated interest) shall be applied first to the portion of the obligation that is not a qualifying installment obligation.

(iv) *Example.* The following example illustrates the provisions of this paragraph (c)(4). In this example, assume that all obligations bear adequate stated interest within the meaning of section 1274(c)(2) and that the fair market value of each nonqualifying installment obligation equals its face amount. The example is as follows:

Example. (i) P corporation has three operating divisions, X, Y, and Z, each engaged in a separate trade or business, and a minor amount of investment assets. On July 1, 1998, P adopts a plan of complete liquidation that meets the criteria of section 453(h)(1)(A). The following sales are promptly made to purchasers unrelated to P: P sells all of the assets of the X division (including all of the inventory property) to B for $30,000 cash and installment obligations totalling $200,000. P sells substantially all of the inventory property of the Y division to C for a $100,000 installment obligation, and sells all of the other assets of the Y division (excluding cash but including installment receivables previously acquired in the ordinary course of the business of the Y division) to D for a $170,000 installment obligation. P sells ⅓ of the inventory property of the Z division to E for $100,000 cash, ⅓ of the inventory property of the Z division to F for a $100,000 installment obligation, and all of the other assets of the Z division (including the remaining ⅓ of the inventory property worth $100,000) to G for $60,000 cash, a $240,000 installment obligation, and the assumption by G of the liabilities of the Z division. The liabilities assumed by G, which are unsecured liabilities and liabilities encumbering the inventory property acquired by G, aggregate $30,000. Thus, the total purchase price G pays is $330,000.

(ii) P immediately completes its liquidation, distributing the cash and installment obligations, which otherwise meet the requirements of section 453, to A, an individual cash-method taxpayer who is its sole shareholder. In 1999, G makes a payment to A of $100,000 (exclusive of interest) on the $240,000 installment obligation.

(iii) In the hands of A, the installment obligations issued by B, C, and D are qualifying installment obligations because they were timely acquired by P in a sale or exchange of its assets. In addition, the installment obligation issued by C is a qualifying installment obligation because it arose from a sale to one person in one transaction of substantially all of the inventory property of the trade or business engaged in by the Y division.

(iv) The installment obligation issued by F is not a qualifying installment obligation because it is in respect of a broken lot of inventory. A portion of the installment obligation issued by G is a qualifying installment obligation and a portion is not a qualifying installment obligation, determined as follows: G purchased part of the inventory property (with a fair market value of $100,000) and all of the other assets of the Z division by paying cash ($60,000), issuing an installment obligation ($240,000), and assuming liabilities of the Z division ($30,000). The assumed liabilities ($30,000) and cash ($60,000) are attributed first to the inventory property. Therefore, only $10,000 of the $240,000 installment obligation is attributed to inventory property. Accordingly, in the hands of A, the G installment obligation is a qualifying installment obligation to the extent of $230,000, but is not a qualifying installment obligation to the extent of the $10,000 attributable to the inventory property.

(v) In the 1998 liquidation of P, A receives a liquidating distribution as follows:

Item	Qualifying installment obligations	Cash and other property
Cash	....	$190,000
B note	$200,000	....
C note	$100,000	....
D note	$170,000	....
F note	....	$100,000
G note [1]	$230,000	$ 10,000
Total	$700,000	$300,000

[1] Face amount $240,000.

(vi) Assume that A's adjusted tax basis in the stock of P is $100,000. Under the installment method, A's selling price and the contract price are both $1 million, the gross profit is $900,000 (selling price of $1 million less adjusted tax basis of $100,000), and the gross profit ratio is 90 percent (gross profit of $900,000 divided by the contract price of $1 million). Accordingly, in 1998, A reports gain of $270,000 (90 percent of $300,000 payment in cash and other property). A's adjusted tax basis in each of the qualifying installment obligations is an amount equal to 10 percent of the obligation's respective face amount. A's adjusted tax basis in the F note, a nonqualifying installment obligation, is $100,000, i.e., the fair market value of the note when received by A. A's adjusted tax basis in the G note, a mixed obligation, is $33,000 (10 percent of the $230,000 qualifying installment obligation portion of the note, plus the $10,000 nonqualifying portion of the note).

(vii) With respect to the $100,000 payment received from G in 1999, $10,000 is treated as the recovery of the adjusted tax basis of the nonqualifying portion of the G installment obligation and $9,000 (10 percent of $90,000) is treated as the recovery of the adjusted tax basis of the portion of the note that is a qualifying installment obligation. The remaining $81,000 (90 percent of $90,000) is reported as gain from the sale of A's stock. See paragraph (c)(4)(iii) of this section.

(5) *Installment obligations attributable to sales of certain property*—(i) *In general.* An installment obligation acquired by a liquidating corporation, to the extent attributable to the sale of property described in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section, is not a qualifying obligation if the corporation is formed or availed of for a principal purpose of avoiding section 453(b)(2) (relating to dealer dispositions and certain other dispositions of personal property), section 453(i) (relating to sales of property subject to recapture), or section 453(k) (relating to dispositions under a revolving credit plan and sales of stock or securities traded on an established securities market) through the use of a party bearing a relationship, either directly or indirectly, described in section 267(b) to any shareholder of the corporation.

(ii) *Covered property.* Property is described in this paragraph (c)(5)(ii) if, within 12 months before or after the adoption of the plan of liquidation, the property was owned by any shareholder and—

(A) The shareholder regularly sold or otherwise disposed of personal property of the same type on the installment plan or the property is real property that the shareholder held for sale to customers in the ordinary course of a trade or business (provided the property is not described in section 453(l)(2) (relating to certain exceptions to the definition of dealer dispositions));

(B) The sale of the property by the shareholder would result in recapture income (within the meaning of section 453(i)(2)), but only if the amount of the recapture income is equal to or greater than 50 percent of the property's fair market value on the date of the sale by the corporation;

(C) The property is stock or securities that are traded on an established securities market; or

(D) The sale of the property by the shareholder would have been under a revolving credit plan.

(iii) *Safe harbor*. Paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section will not apply to the liquidation of a corporation if, on the date the plan of complete liquidation is adopted and thereafter, less than 15 percent of the fair market value of the corporation's assets is attributable to property described in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section.

(iv) *Example*. The provisions of this paragraph (c)(5) are illustrated by the following example:

Example. Ten percent of the fair market value of the assets of T is attributable to stock and securities traded on an established securities market. T owns no other assets described in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section. T, after adopting a plan of complete liquidation, sells all of its stock and securities holdings to C corporation in exchange for an installment obligation bearing adequate stated interest, sells all of its other assets to B corporation for cash, and distributes the cash and installment obligation to its sole shareholder, A, in a complete liquidation that satisfies section 453(h)(1)(A). Because the C installment obligation arose from a sale of publicly traded stock and securities, T cannot report the gain on the sale under the installment method pursuant to section 453(k)(2). In the hands of A, however, the C installment obligation is treated as having arisen out of a sale of the stock of T corporation. In addition, the general rule of paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section does not apply, even if a principal purpose of the liquidation was the avoidance of section 453(k)(2), because the fair market value of the publicly traded stock and securities is less than 15 percent of the total fair market value of T's assets. Accordingly, section 453(k)(2) does not apply to A, and A may use the installment method to report the gain recognized on the payments it receives in respect of the obligation.

(d) *Liquidating distributions received in more than one taxable year*. If a qualifying shareholder receives liquidating distributions to which this section applies in more than one taxable year, the shareholder must reasonably estimate the gain attributable to distributions received in each taxable year. In allocating basis to calculate the gain for a taxable year, the shareholder must reasonably estimate the anticipated aggregate distributions. For this purpose, the shareholder must take into account distributions and other relevant events or information that the shareholder knows or reasonably could know up to the date on which the federal income tax return for that year is filed. If the gain for a taxable year is properly taken into account on the basis of a reasonable estimate and the exact amount is subsequently determined the difference, if any, must be taken into account for the taxable year in which the subsequent determination is made. However, the shareholder may file an amended return for the earlier year in lieu of taking the difference into account for the subsequent taxable year.

(e) *Effective date*. This section is applicable to distributions of qualifying installment obligations made on or after January 28, 1998.

[T.D. 8762, 63 FR 4170, Jan. 28, 1998]

§ 1.453–12 Allocation of unrecaptured section 1250 gain reported on the installment method.

(a) *General rule*. Unrecaptured section 1250 gain, as defined in section 1(h)(7), is reported on the installment method if that method otherwise applies under section 453 or 453A and the corresponding regulations. If gain from an installment sale includes unrecaptured section 1250 gain and adjusted net capital gain (as defined in section 1(h)(4)), the unrecaptured section 1250 gain is taken into account before the adjusted net capital gain.

(b) *Installment payments from sales before May 7, 1997*. The amount of unrecaptured section 1250 gain in an installment payment that is properly taken into account after May 6, 1997, from a sale before May 7, 1997, is determined as if, for all payments properly taken into account after the date of sale but before May 7, 1997, unrecaptured section 1250 gain had been taken into account before adjusted net capital gain.

(c) *Installment payments received after May 6, 1997, and on or before August 23, 1999*. If the amount of unrecaptured section 1250 gain in an installment payment that is properly taken into account after May 6, 1997, and on or before August 23, 1999, is less than the amount that would have been taken into account under this section, the lesser amount is used to determine the amount of unrecaptured section 1250 gain that remains to be taken into account.

(d) *Examples*. In each example, the taxpayer, an individual whose taxable year is the calendar year, does not elect out of the installment method. The installment obligation bears adequate stated interest, and the property sold is real property held in a trade or business that qualifies as both section 1231 property and section 1250 property. In all taxable years, the taxpayer's marginal tax rate on ordinary income is 28 percent. The following examples illustrate the rules of this section:

Example 1. General rule. This example illustrates the rule of paragraph (a) of this section as follows:

(i) In 1999, A sells property for $10,000, to be paid in ten equal annual installments beginning on December 1, 1999. A originally purchased the property for $5000, held the property for several years, and took straight-line depreciation deductions in the amount of $3000. In each of the years 1999–2008, A has no other capital or section 1231 gains or losses.

(ii) A's adjusted basis at the time of the sale is $2000. Of A's $8000 of section 1231 gain on the sale of the property, $3000 is attributable to prior straight-line depreciation deductions and is unrecaptured section 1250 gain. The gain on each installment payment is $800.

(iii) As illustrated in the table in this paragraph (iii) of this *Example 1*., A takes into account the unrecaptured section 1250 gain first. Therefore, the gain on A's first three payments, received in 1999, 2000, and 2001, is taxed at 25 percent. Of the $800 of gain on the fourth payment, received in 2002, $600 is taxed at 25 percent and the remaining $200 is taxed at 20 percent. The gain on A's remaining six installment payments is taxed at 20 percent. The table is as follows:

	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004–2008	Total gain
Installment gain	800	800	800	800	800	4000	8000
Taxed at 25%	800	800	800	600			3000
Taxed at 20%				200	800	4000	5000
Remaining to be taxed at 25%	2200	1400	600				

Example 2. Installment payments from sales prior to May 7, 1997. This example illustrates the rule of paragraph (b) of this section as follows:

(i) The facts are the same as in *Example 1* except that A sold the property in 1994, received the first of the ten annual installment payments on December 1, 1994, and had no other capital or section 1231 gains or losses in the years 1994–2003.

(ii) As in *Example 1*, of A's $8000 of gain on the sale of the property, $3000 was attributable to prior straight-line depreciation deductions and is unrecaptured section 1250 gain.

(iii) As illustrated in the following table, A's first three payments, in 1994, 1995, and 1996, were received before May 7, 1997, and taxed at 28 percent. Under the rule described in paragraph (b) of this section, A determines the allocation of unrecaptured section 1250 gain for each installment payment after May 6, 1997, by taking unrecaptured section 1250 gain into account first, treating the general rule of paragraph (a) of this section as having applied since the time the property was sold, in 1994. Consequently, of the $800 of gain on the fourth payment, received in 1997, $600 is taxed at 25 percent and the remaining $200 is taxed at 20 percent. The gain on A's remaining six installment payments is taxed at 20 percent. The table is as follows:

	1994	1995	1996	1997	1998	1999-2003	Total gain
Installment gain	800	800	800	800	800	4000	8000
Taxed at 28%	800	800	800				2400
Taxed at 25%				600			600
Taxed at 20%				200	800	4000	5000
Remaining to be taxed at 25%	2200	1400	600				

Example 3. Effect of section 1231(c) recapture. This example illustrates the rule of paragraph (a) of this section when there are non-recaptured net section 1231 losses, as defined in section 1231(c)(2), from prior years as follows:

(i) The facts are the same as in *Example 1*, except that in 1999 A has non-recaptured net section 1231 losses from the previous four years of $1000.

(ii) As illustrated in the table in paragraph (iv) of this *Example 3*, in 1999, all of A's $800 installment gain is recaptured as ordinary income under section 1231(c). Under the rule described in paragraph (a) of this section, for purposes of determining the amount of unrecaptured section 1250 gain remaining to be taken into account, the $800 recaptured as ordinary income under section 1231(c) is treated as reducing unrecaptured section 1250 gain, rather than adjusted net capital gain. Therefore, A has $2200 of unrecaptured section 1250 gain remaining to be taken into account.

(iii) In the year 2000, A's installment gain is taxed at two rates. First, $200 is recaptured as ordinary income under section 1231(c). Second, the remaining $600 of gain on A's year 2000 installment payment is taxed at 25 percent. Because the full $800 of gain reduces unrecaptured section 1250 gain, A has $1400 of unrecaptured section 1250 gain remaining to be taken into account.

(iv) The gain on A's installment payment received in 2001 is taxed at 25 percent. Of the $800 of gain on the fourth payment, received in 2002, $600 is taxed at 25 percent and the remaining $200 is taxed at 20 percent. The gain on A's remaining six installment payments is taxed at 20 percent. The table is as follows:

	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004-2008	Total gain
Installment gain	800	800	800	800	800	4000	8000
Taxed at ordinary rates under section 1231(c)	800	200					1000
Taxed at 25%		600	800	600			2000
Taxed at 20%				200	800	4000	5000
Remaining non-recaptured net section 1231 losses	200						
Remaining to be taxed at 25%	2200	1400	600				

Example 4. Effect of a net section 1231 loss. This example illustrates the application of paragraph (a) of this section when there is a net section 1231 loss as follows:

(i) The facts are the same as in *Example 1* except that A has section 1231 losses of $1000 in 1999.

(ii) In 1999, A's section 1231 installment gain of $800 does not exceed A's section 1231 losses of $1000. Therefore, A has a net section 1231 loss of $200. As a result, under section 1231(a) all of A's section 1231 gains and losses are treated as ordinary gains and losses. As illustrated in the following table, A's entire $800 of installment gain is ordinary gain. Under the rule described in paragraph (a) of this section, for purposes of determining the amount of unrecaptured section 1250 gain remaining to be taken into account, A's $800 of ordinary section 1231 installment gain in 1999 is treated as reducing unrecaptured section 1250 gain. Therefore, A has $2200 of unrecaptured section 1250 gain remaining to be taken into account.

(iii) In the year 2000, A has $800 of section 1231 installment gain, resulting in a net section 1231 gain of $800. A also has $200 of non-recaptured net section 1231 losses. The $800 gain is taxed at two rates. First, $200 is taxed at ordinary rates under section 1231(c), recapturing the $200 net section 1231 loss sustained in 1999. Second, the remaining $600 of gain on A's year 2000 installment payment is taxed at 25 percent. As in *Example 3*, the $200 of section 1231(c) gain is treated as reducing unrecaptured section 1250 gain, rather than adjusted net capital gain. Therefore, A has $1400 of unrecaptured section 1250 gain remaining to be taken into account.

(iv) The gain on A's installment payment received in 2001 is taxed at 25 percent, reducing the remaining unrecaptured section 1250 gain to $600. Of the $800 of gain on the fourth payment, received in 2002, $600 is taxed at 25 percent and the remaining $200 is taxed at 20 percent. The gain on A's remaining six installment payments is taxed at 20 percent. The table is as follows:

	1999	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004–2008	Total gain
Installment gain	800	800	800	800	800	4000	8000
Ordinary gain under section 1231(a)	800						800
Taxed at ordinary rates under section 1231(c)		200					200
Taxed at 25%		600	800	600			2000
Taxed at 20%				200	800	4000	5000
Net section 1231 loss	200						
Remaining to be taxed at 25%	2200	1400	600				

(e) *Effective date.* This section applies to installment payments properly taken into account after August 23, 1999.

[T.D. 8836, 64 FR 45875, Aug. 23, 1999]

§ 1.453A–0 Table of contents.

This section lists the paragraphs and subparagraphs contained in §§ 1.453A–1 through 1.453A–3.

[T.D. 8270, 54 FR 46376, Nov. 3, 1989]

§ 1.453A–1 Installment method of reporting income by dealers on personal property.

(a) *In general.* A dealer (as defined in paragraph (c)(1) of this section) may elect to return the income from the sale of personal property on the installment method if such sale is a sale on the installment plan (as defined in paragraphs (c)(3) and (d) of this section). Under the installment method of accounting, a taxpayer may return as income from installment sales in any taxable year that proportion of the installment payments actually received in that year which the gross profit realized or to be realized when the property is paid for bears to the total contract price. For this purpose, gross profit means sales less cost of goods sold. See paragraph (d) of this section for additional rules relating to the computation of income under the installment method of accounting. In addition, see § 1.453A–2 for rules treating revolving credit plans as installment plans for taxable years beginning on or before December 31, 1986.

(b) *Effect of security.* A dealer may adopt (but is not required to do so) one of the following four ways of protecting against loss in case of default by the purchaser:

(1) An agreement that title is to remain in the vendor until performance of the purchaser's part of the transaction is completed;

(2) A form of contract in which title is conveyed to the purchaser immediately, but subject to a lien for the unpaid portion of the selling price;

(3) A present transfer of title to the purchaser, who at the same time executes a reconveyance in the form of a chattel mortgage to the vendor; or

(4) A conveyance to a trustee pending performance of the contract and subject to its provisions.

(c) *Definitions of dealer, sale, and sale on the installment plan.* For purposes of the regulations under section 453A—

(1) The term ''dealer'' means a person who regularly sells or otherwise disposes of personal property on the installment plan;

(2) The term ''sale'' includes sales and other dispositions; and

(3) Except as provided in paragraph (d)(2) of this section, the term ''sale on the installment plan'' means—

(i) A sale of personal property by the taxpayer under any plan for the sale of personal property, which plan, by its terms and conditions, contemplates that each sale under the plan will be paid for in two or more payments; or

(ii) A sale of personal property by the taxpayer under any plan for the sale of personal property—

(A) Which plan, by its terms and conditions, contemplates that such sale will be paid for in two or more payments; and

(B) Which sale is in fact paid for in two or more payments.

(d) *Installment plans*—(1) *Traditional installment plans.* A traditional installment plan usually has the following characteristics:

(i) The execution of a separate installment contract for each sale or disposition of personal property; and

(ii) The retention by the dealer of some type of security interest in such property.

Normally, a sale under a traditional installment plan meets the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section.

(2) *Revolving credit plans.* Sales under a revolving credit plan (within the meaning of § 1.453A–2(c)(1))—

(i) Are treated, for taxable years beginning on or before December 31, 1986, as sales on the installment plan to the extent provided in § 1.453A–2, which provides for the application of the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section to sales under revolving credit plans; and

(ii) Are not treated as sales on the installment plan for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1986.

(e) *Installment income of dealers in personal property*—(1) *In general.* The income from sales on the installment plan of a dealer may be ascertained by treating as income that proportion of the total payments received in the taxable year from sales on the installment plan (such payments being allocated to the year against the sales of which they apply) which the gross profit realized or to be realized on the total sales on the installment plan made during each year bears to the total contract price of all such sales made during that respective year. However, if the dealer demonstrates to the satisfaction of the district director that income from sales on the installment plan is clearly reflected, the income from such sales may be ascertained by treating as income that proportion of the total payments received in the taxable year from sales on the installment plan (such payments being allocated to the year against the sales of which they apply) which either:

(i) The gross profit realized or to be realized on the total credit sales made during each year bears to the total contract price of all credit sales during that respective year, or

(ii) The gross profit realized or to be realized on all sales made during each year bears to the total contract price of all sales made during that respective year.

A dealer who desires to compute income by the installment method shall maintain accounting records in such a manner as to enable an accurate computation to be made by such method in accordance with the provisions of this section, section 446, and § 1.446–1.

(2) *Gross profit and total contract price.* For purposes of paragraph (e)(1) of this section, in computing the gross profit realized or to be realized on the total sales on the installment plan, there shall be included in the total selling price and, thus, in the total contract price of all such sales.

(i) The amount of carrying charges or interest which is determined at the time of each sale and is added to the established cash selling price of such property and is treated as part of the selling price for customer billing purposes, and

(ii) In the case of sales made in taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 1960, the amount of carrying charges or interest determined with respect to such sales which are added contemporaneously with the sale on the books of account of the seller but are treated as periodic service charges for customer billing purposes.

Any change in the amount of the carrying charges or interest in a year subsequent to the sale will not affect the computation of the gross profit for the year of sale but will be taken into account at the time the carrying charges or interest are adjusted. The application of this paragraph (e)(2) to carrying charges or interest described in paragraph (e)(2)(ii) of this section may be illustrated by the following example:

Example. X Corporation makes sales on the traditional installment plan. The customer's order specifies that the total price consists of a cash price plus a ''time price differential'' of 1½ percent per month on the outstanding balance in the customer's account, and the customer is billed in this manner. On its books and for purposes of reporting to stockholders, X Corporation consistently makes the following entries each month when it records its sales. A debit entry is make to accounts receivable (for the total price) and balancing credit entries are made to sales (for the established selling price) and to a reserve account for collection expense (for the amount of the time price differential). In computing the gross profit realized or to be realized on the total sales on the installment plan, the total selling price and, thus, the total contract price for purposes of this paragraph (e) would, with respect to sales made in taxable years beginning on or after January 1, 1960, include the time price differential.

(3) *Carrying charges not included in total contract price.* In the case of sales by dealers in personal property made during taxable years beginning after December 31, 1963, the income from which is returned on the installment method, if the carrying charges or interest with respect to such sales is not included in the total contract price, payments received with respect to such sales shall be treated as applying first against such carrying charges or interest.

(f) Other accounting methods. If the vendor chooses as a matter of consistent practice to return the income from installment sales on an accrual method (,) such a course is permissible.

(g) Records. In adopting the installment method of accounting the seller must maintain such records as are necessary to clearly reflect income in accordance with this section, section 446 and § 1.446–1.

(h) *Effective date.* This section applies for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1953, and ending after August 16, 1954, but generally does not apply to sales made after December 31, 1987, in taxable years ending after such date. For sales made after December 31, 1987, sales made by a dealer in personal or real property shall not be treated as sales on the installment plan. (However, see section 453(l)(2) for exceptions to this rule.)

[T.D. 8270, 54 FR 46377, Nov. 3, 1989]

§ 1.453A–2 Treatment of revolving credit plans; taxable years beginning on or before December 31, 1986.

(a) *In general.* If a dealer sells or otherwise disposes of personal property under a revolving credit plan—

(1) Such sales will be treated as sales on the installment plan to the extent provided in paragraph (c) of this section;

(2) Income from sales treated as sales on the installment plan under paragraph (c) of this section may be returned on the installment method; and

(3) Income returned on the installment method is computed in accordance with § 1.453A–1, except that—

(i) The gross profit on such sales is computed without regard to § 1.453A– 1 (e)(2);

(ii) Under the circumstances described in paragraph (c)(6)(vi) of this section, the taxpayer may, in computing income for a taxable year, treat all such sales as sales made in such taxable year for purposes of applying the gross profit percentage; and

(iii) The rule contained in § 1.453A– 1 (e)(3) is applied in accordance with paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section.

(b) *Coordination with traditional installment plan.* A dealer who makes sales of personal property under both a revolving credit plan and a traditional installment plan (1) may elect to report only sales under the traditional installment plan on the installment method, (2) may elect to report only sales under the revolving credit plan on the installment method, or (3) may elect to report both sales under the revolving credit plan and the traditional installment plan on the installment method.

(c) *Revolving credit plans.* (1) To the extent provided in this paragraph (c) sales under a revolving credit plan will be treated as sales on the installment plan. The term ''revolving credit plan'' includes cycle budget accounts, flexible budget accounts, continuous budget accounts, and other similar plans or arrangements for the sale of personal property under which the customer agrees to pay each billing-month (as defined in paragraph (c)(6)(iii) of this section) a part of the outstanding balance of the customer's account. Sales under a revolving credit plan do not constitute sales on the installment plan merely by reason of the fact that the total debt at the end of a billing-month is paid in installments. The terms and conditions of a revolving credit plan do not contemplate that each sale under the plan will be paid for in two or more payments and thus do not meet the requirements of §1.453A–1(c)(3)(i). In addition, since under a revolving credit plan payments are not generally applied to liquidate any particular sale, and since the terms and conditions of such plan contemplate that account balances may be paid in full or in installments, it is generally impossible to determine that a particular sale under a revolving credit plan is to be or is in fact paid for in installments so as to meet the requirements of §1.453A–1 (c)(3)(ii). However, paragraphs (c) (2) and (3) of this section provides rules under which a certain percentage of charges under a revolving credit plan will be treated as sales on the installment plan. For purposes of arriving at this percentage, these rules, in general, treat as sales on the plan those sales under a revolving installment credit plan:

(i) Which are of the type which the terms and conditions of the plan contemplate will be paid for in two or more installments and

(ii) Which are charged to accounts on which subsequent payments indicate that such sales are being paid for in two or more installments.

(2)(i) The percentage of charges under a revolving credit plan which will be treated as sales on the installment plan shall be computed by making an actual segregation of charges in a probability sample of the revolving credit accounts and by applying the rules contained in paragraph (c)(3) of this section to determine what percentage of charges in the sample is to be treated as sales on the installment plan. (See paragraph (c)(5) of this section for rules to be used if some of the sales under a revolving credit plan are nonpersonal property sales (as defined in paragraph (c)(6)(iv) of this section).) Such segregation shall be made of charges which make up the balances in the sample accounts as of the end of each customer's last billing-month ending within the taxable year. (See paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section for rules to be used in determining which charges make up the balance of an account.) However, in making such segregation, any account to which a sale is charged during the taxable year on which no payment is credited after the billing-month within which the sale is made (hereinafter called the ''billing-month of sale'') and on or before the end of the first billing-month ending in the taxpayer's next taxable year shall be disregarded and not taken into account in the determination of what percentage of charges in the sample is to be treated as sales on the installment plan. In order to obtain a probability sample, the accounts shall be selected in accordance with generally accepted probability sampling techniques. The appropriateness of the sampling technique and the accuracy and reliability of the results obtained must, if requested, be demonstrated to the satisfaction of the district director. If the district director is not satisfied that the taxpayer's sample is appropriate or that the results obtained are accurate and reliable, the taxpayer shall recompute the sample percentage or make appropriate adjustments to the original computations in a manner satisfactory to the district director. The taxpayer shall maintain records in sufficient detail to show the method of computing and applying the sample.

(ii) For taxable years ending before January 31, 1964, a taxpayer who has reported for income tax purposes all or a portion of sales under a revolving credit plan as sales on the installment method may apply the percentage obtained for the first taxable year ending on or after such date in determining the percentage of charges under a revolving credit plan for such prior taxable year (or years) which will be treated as sales on the installment plan. However, in computing the percentage to be applied in determining the percentage of charges under a revolving credit plan which will be treated as sales on the installment plan for such prior taxable year (or years), the rule stated in §1.453A–1(e)(3) shall not apply. See paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section for rules relating to the application of payments to finance charges for such prior taxable years.

(3) For the purpose of determining the percentage described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, a charge under a revolving credit plan will be treated as a sale on the installment plan only if such charge is a sale (as defined in paragraph (c)(6) of this section) and meets the following requirements:

(i) The sale must be of the type which the terms and conditions of the plan contemplate will be paid for in two or more installments. If the aggregate of sales charged during a billing-month to an account under a revolving credit plan exceeds the required monthly payment, then all sales during such billing-month shall be considered to be of the type which the terms and conditions of such plan contemplate will be paid for in two or more installments. The required monthly payment shall be the amount of the payment which the terms and conditions of the revolving credit contract require the customer to make with respect to a billing-month. If the amount of such payment is not fixed at the date the contract is entered into, but is dependent upon the balance of the account, then such amount shall be the amount that the customer is required to pay (but not including any past-due payments) as shown on the statement either:

(A) For the last billing-month ending within the taxpayer's taxable year or

(B) For the billing-month of sale, whichever method the taxpayer adopts for all accounts. A taxpayer shall not change such method of determining the required monthly payment based upon the balance of the account without obtaining the consent of the district director. In any case where the required monthly payment is not set in accordance with a consistent method used during the entire taxable year, the district director may determine the required monthly payment in accordance with the method used during the major portion of such taxable year if the use of such method is necessary in order to reflect properly the income from sales under a revolving credit plan. The requirements stated in this paragraph (c)(3)(i) may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). Under the terms of a revolving credit plan the required monthly payment to be made by customer A is $20. During the billing-month ending in December, sales aggregating $80 are charged to customer A's account, and during the next billing-month, ending in January, sales aggregating $19.95 and finance charges of $.60 are charged to A's account. Since the aggregate of sales charged to customer A's account during the billing-month ending in December ($80) exceeds the required monthly payment ($20), the terms and conditions of the plan contemplate that the sales charged during such billing-month are of the type which will be paid for in two or more installments. Since the aggregate of sales charged to customer A's account during the billing-month ending in January ($19.95) does not exceed the required monthly payment, the sales making up the aggregate of sales in such billing-month are not of the type which the terms and conditions of the plan contemplate will be paid for in two or more installments.

Example (2). The terms of a revolving credit plan require a payment of 20 percent of the balance of the customer's account as of the end of the billing-month for which the statement is rendered. A customer makes purchases aggregating $25 in the customer's next to the last billing-month ending within the taxpayer's taxable year, and the balance at the end of that month is $150. At the end of the customer's last billing-month ending within the taxpayer's taxable year, the balance of the account has decreased to $110. If the taxpayer determines the required monthly payment by reference to the payment required on the statement for the last billing-month ending within the taxable year and applies such method consistently to all accounts, then the sales making up the $25 aggregate of sales are of the type which the terms and conditions of the plan contemplate will be paid for in two or more installments. Although such aggregate was less than the $30 payment (20%×$150) required on the statement rendered for the billing-month of sales. It was more than the $22 (20%×$110) that the customer was required to pay on the statement rendered for his last billing-month ending within the taxable year, and thus meets the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(i). If, however, the taxpayer determines the required monthly payment by reference to the payment required on the statement for the billing-month of sale, then the sales making up the aggregate of sales during such billing-month do not meet the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(i) because such aggregate was less than the $30 payment required on the statement rendered for such month.

(ii) The sale must be charged to an account on which the first payment after the billing-month of sale indicates that the sale is being paid in installments. The first payment after the billing-month of sale indicates that the sale is being paid in installments if, and only if, such payment is an amount which is less than the balance of the account as of the close of the billing-month of sale. For purposes of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii), such balance shall be reduced by any return or allowance credited to the account after the close of the billing-month of sale and before the close of the billing-month within which the first payment after the billing-month of sale is credited to the account, unless the taxpayer demonstrates that the return or allowance was attributable to a charge made in a month subsequent to the billing-month of sale. The requirements stated in this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) may be illustrated by the following examples, in which it is assumed that the taxpayer's annual accounting period ends on January 31.

Example (1). Customer A's revolving credit account shows the following sales and payments:

Month ending	Aggregate sales in month	Payments	Balance
December 20	$150	0	$150
January 20	75	$30	195
February 20	0	195	0

All sales made in the billing-month ending December 20 meet the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) because the first payment on the account after such billing-month ($30) was less than the balance of the account as of the close of such billing-month ($150); and none of the sales made in the billing-month ending January 20 meets the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) because the balance of the account as of the end of such billing-month was liquidated in one payment. By application of the rules of paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section, the balance in the account as of the last billing-month ending in the taxable year ($195) consists of $120 of the $150 of sales made in the billing-month ending December 20 and all of the $75 of sales made in the billing-month ending January 20. Therefore, $120 of the account balance meets the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) and $75 does not.

Example (*2*). Customer B's revolving credit account shows the following sales and payments:

Month ending	Aggregate sales in month	Payments	Balance
December 20	$ 50	0	$ 50
January 20	100	0	150
February 20	0	$50	100

None of the sales made in the billing-month ending December 20 meets the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) because the first payment credited to the account after such billing-month ($50) is not less than the balance of the account as of the close of such month ($50). All of the sales made in the billing-month ending January 20 meet the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) because the first payment after such billing-month ($50) is less than the balance of the account as of the close of such month ($150).

Example (3). Customer C's revolving credit account shows the following purchases and credits:

Month ending	Item	Charges	Credits	Balance
January 20	Coat	$55		
	Dress	40		
	Shirt	5		$100
February 20	Return		$5	
	Payments		95	0

None of the sales made in the billing-month ending January 20 meets the requirements of this paragraph (c)(3)(ii) because the first payment credited to the account after such billing-month ($95) was equal to the balance of the account as of the end of such billing-month, $95. For this purpose, the balance of $100 is reduced by the $5 return which was credited to the account after the close of the billing-month of sale and before the close of the billing-month within which the first payment after the billing-month of sale is credited.

(4) The provisions of paragraphs (c) (2) and (3) of this section may be illustrated by the following examples in which it is assumed that the taxpayer is a dealer whose annual accounting period ends on January 31.

Example (1). Customer A's revolving credit ledger account shows the following:

Month ending	Aggregate sales in month [1]	Returns and allowances	Payments	Finance charges	Balance
January 20	$15.00	0	0	0	$15.00

Month ending	Aggregate sales in month [1]	Returns and allowances	Payments	Finance charges	Balance
February 20	0	0	0	$0.15	15.15

[1] Including sales of personal property and nonpersonal property sales.

For purposes of the segregation provided for in paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section, customer A's account will be disregarded and not taken into account in the determination of what percentage of charges in the sample is to be treated as sales on the installment plan because no payment was credited to that account after the billing-month of sale and on or before February 20.

Example (2). This example is applicable with respect to sales made during taxable years beginning before January 1, 1964. Under the terms of corporation X's revolving credit plan, payments are required in accordance with the following schedule:

	Required monthly payment
Unpaid balance:	
0 to $99.99	$20
$100 to $199.99	40
$200 to $299.99	60

Customer B's revolving credit ledger account for the period beginning on September 21, 1963, and ending February 20, 1964, shows the following:

Month ending	Aggregate sales in month [1]	Returns and allowances	Payments	Finance charges	Balances
October 20	$55.00	0	0	0	$55.00
November 20	45.00	0	$20.00	$0.35	80.35
December 20	20.00	0	20.00	.60	80.95
January 20	26.00	$5.00	20.00	.61	82.56
February 20	0	10.00	72.56	0	0

[1] Including sales of personal property and nonpersonal property sales.

The three $20 payments and the $5 return or allowance made in the billing-months ending in the taxable year are applied under the rules in paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section to liquidate the earliest outstanding charges, first to the $55 aggregate of sales in the billing-month ending October 20 and next to $10 of the aggregate of sales made in the billing-month ending November 20. Thus, the balance of the account as of the close of the billing-month ending January 20, $82.56, is made up as follows:

Remainder of sales in billing-month ending Nov. 20 ($45 − $10)	$35.00
Finance charges for billing-month ending Nov. 20	0.35
Sales for billing-month ending Dec. 20	20.00
Finance charge for billing-month ending Dec. 20	0.60
Sales for billing-month ending Jan. 20	26.00
Finance charge for billing-month ending Jan. 20	0.61
Total	82.56

The sales of $35 remaining from the aggregate of sales for the billing-month ending November 20 meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section because the aggregate of sales charged during such billing-month ($45) exceeds the required monthly payment ($20), and such sales meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section because the first payment after the billing-month of sale ($20) is an amount less than the balance of the account as of the close of such month ($80.35). Therefore, $35 of sales will be treated as sales on the installment plan. The $20 aggregate of sales charged during the billing-month ending December 20 does not meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section because it is in an amount which does not exceed the required monthly payment ($20). (The finance charge of $0.60 added in the billing-month does not enter into the determination of the aggregate of sales for the month because the term ''sales'' (as defined in paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section does not include finance charges). The $26 aggregate of sales for the billing-month ending January 20 does not meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section because the first payment after such billing-month ($72.56) was equal to the balance of the account as of the close of such billing-month ($72.56). For this purpose, the balance of $82.56 is reduced by the $10 return or allowance which was credited after the billing-month of sale and before February 20. Thus, of the $82.56 balance of B's account as of the close of the last billing-month ending within corporation X's taxable year, $35 will be treated as sales on the installment plan for purposes of determining the percentage provided for paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

Example (3). This example is applicable with respect to sales made during taxable years beginning after December 31, 1963. Assume the facts in example (2), except that Customer B's revolving credit ledger account is for the period beginning on September 21, 1964 and ending February 20, 1965. Since payments received are first used to liquidate any outstanding finance charges under the rule in paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section, the $20 payment in December liquidated the $0.35 finance charge accrued at the end of the November billing-month and the $20 payment in January liquidated the $0.60 finance charge accrued at the end of the December billing-month. The balance of the three $20 payments ($59.05) and the $5 return or allowance are applied (under the rules in paragraph (c)(6)(v) of this section) to liquidate the earliest outstanding sales, first to the $55 aggregate of sales in the billing-month ending October 20 and next to $9.05 of the aggregate of sales made in the billing-month ending November 20. Thus, the balance of the account as of the close of the billing-month ending January 20, $82.56, is made up as follows:

Remainder of sales in billing-month ending Nov. 20 ($45-$9.05)	$35.95
Sales for billing-month ending Dec. 20	20.00
Sales for billing-month ending Jan. 20	26.00
Finance charge for billing-month ending Jan. 20	0.61
Total	82.56

The sales of $35.95 remaining from the aggregate of sales for the billing-month ending November 20 meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section because the aggregate of sales charged during such billing-month ($45) exceeds the required monthly payment ($20), and such sales meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section because the first payment after the billing-month of sale ($20) is an amount less than the balance of the account as of the close of such month ($80.35). Therefore, $35.95 of sales will be treated as sales on the installment plan. The $20 aggregate of sales charged during the billing-month ending December 20 does not meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section because it is in an amount which does not exceed the required monthly payment ($20). The $26 aggregate of sales for the billing-month ending January 20 does not meet the requirements of paragraph (c)(3)(ii) of this section because the first payment after such billing-month ($72.56) was equal to the balance of the account as of the close of such billing-month ($72.56). For this purpose, the balance of $82.56 is reduced by the $10 return or allowance which was credited after the billing-month of sale and before February 20. Thus, of the $82.56 balance of B's account as of the close of the last billing-month ending within corporation X's taxable year $35.95 will be treated as sales on the installment plan for purposes of determining the percentage provided for in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(5) Sales under a revolving credit plan which are nonpersonal property sales (as defined in paragraph (c)(6)(iv) of this section) do not constitute sales on the installment plan. Therefore, the charges under a revolving credit plan must be reduced by the nonpersonal property sales, if any, under such plan, before application of the sample percentage as provided for in paragraph (c)(2)(i) of this section. The taxpayer may treat as the nonpersonal property sales under the plan for the taxable year an amount which bears the same ratio to the total sales under the revolving credit plan made in the taxable year as the total nonpersonal property sales made in such year bears to the total sales made in such year.

(6) For purposes of this paragraph (c)—

(i) The term ''sales'' includes sales of services, such as a charge for watch repair, as well as sales of property, but does not include finance or service charges.

(ii) The term ''charges'' includes sales of services and property as well as finance or service charges.

(iii) A billing-month is that period of time for which a periodic statement of charges and credits is rendered to a customer.

(iv) The term ''nonpersonal property sales'' means all sales which are not sales of personal property made by the taxpayer. Thus, sales of a department leased by the taxpayer to another are nonpersonal property sales. Likewise, charges for services rendered by the taxpayer are nonpersonal property sales unless such services are incidental to and rendered contemporaneously with the sale of personal property, in which case such charges shall be considered as constituting part of the selling price of such property.

(v) Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph (c)(6)(v), each payment received from a customer under a revolving credit plan before the close of the last billing-month ending in the taxable year shall be applied to liquidate the earliest outstanding charges under such plan, notwithstanding any rule of law or contract provision to the contrary. For purposes of determining which charges remain in the balance of an account at the end of the last billing-month ending in the taxable year, the taxpayer may apply returns and allowances which are credited before the close of the last billing-month ending in the taxable year either (A) to liquidate or reduce the charge for the specific item so returned or for which an allowance is permitted, or (B) to liquidate or reduce the earliest outstanding charges. The method so selected for applying returns and allowances shall be followed on a consistent basis from year to year unless the district director consents to a change. Additionally, finance or service charges which are computed on the basis of the balance of the account at the end of the previous billing-month (usually reduced by payments during the current billing-month) are accrued at the end of the current billing-month and are therefore considered, for purposes of determining the earliest outstanding charges, as charged to the account after any sales made during the current billing month. However, for purposes of determining which charges remain in the balance of an account at the end of the last billing-month ending in a taxable year which began after December 31, 1963, payments received during such year shall be applied first against any finance or service charges which were outstanding at the time such payment was received. The preceding sentence shall not apply with respect to a computation made for purposes of applying the rule described in paragraph (c)(2)(ii) of this section.

(vi) The taxpayer shall allocate those sales under a revolving credit plan which are treated as sales on the installment plan to the proper year of sale in order to apply the appropriate gross profit percentage as provided for in §1.453A–1(e). This allocation shall be made on the basis of the percentages of charges treated as sales on the installment plan which are attributable to each taxable year as determined in the sample of accounts described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section. However, if the taxpayer demonstrates to the satisfaction of the district director that income from sales on the installment plan is clearly reflected, all sales may be considered as being made in the taxable year for purposes of applying the gross profit percentage.

(7) The provisions of this paragraph (c) may be illustrated by the following example:

Example. Corporation X is a dealer and has elected to report on the installment method those sales under its revolving credit plan which may be treated as sales on the installment plan. Corporation X's taxable year ends on January 31, and the total balance of all its revolving credit accounts as of January 31, 1964, is $2,000,000. The total sales made in the taxable year are $10,000,000 of which $500,000 are nonpersonal property sales. The gross profit percentage realized or to be realized on all sales made in the taxable year is 40 percent. The amount of the gross profit contained in the year-end balance of $2,000,000 which may be deferred to succeeding years is computed as follows:

(i) In order to reduce the charges appearing in the year-end balance of revolving credit accounts receivable by the nonpersonal property sales contained therein, corporation X determines the amount of such nonpersonal property sales under the method permitted in paragraph (c)(5) of this section. Corporation X first determines the ratio which total nonpersonal property sales made during the year ($500,000) bears to total sales made during the year ($10,000,000), and then applies the percentage (5 percent) thus obtained to the year-end balance of revolving credit accounts receivable ($2,000,000). The nonpersonal property sales thus determined ($100,000) is subtracted from such year-end balance to obtain the charges under the revolving credit plan appearing in the year-end balance ($1,900,000) to which the sample percentage is to be applied.

(ii) In accordance with generally accepted sampling techniques, the taxpayer selects a probability sample of all revolving credit accounts having balances for billing-months ending in January 1964. The technique employed results in a random selection of accounts with total balances of $100,000.

(iii) Analysis of these sample accounts discloses that of the $100,000 of balances, $10,000 of balances are in accounts on which no payment was credited after a billing-month of sale and on or before the end of the first billing-month ending in the taxable year beginning February 1, 1964. These balances are, therefore, disregarded and not taken into account in the determination of what percentage of sales in the sample is to be treated as sales on the installment plan. Of the remaining $90,000 of balances, the taxpayer determines, by analyzing the ledger cards in the sample, that $63,000 of balances are composed of sales which meet the requirements of paragraphs (c)(3) (i) and (ii) of this section and are thus treated as sales on the installment plan. The remaining $27,000 of balances either did not meet the requirements of paragraphs (c)(3) (i) and (ii) of this section or were not sales (as defined in paragraph (c)(6)(i) of this section). The percentage of charges in the sample treated as sales on the installment plan is, therefore, 70 percent ($63,000 ÷ $90,000).

(iv) The charges in the year-end balance which are to be treated as sales on the installment plan, $1,330,000, are computed by multiplying the charges to which the sample percentage is applied ($1,900,000) by the sample percentage (70 percent).

(v) The deferred gross profit attributable to sales under the revolving credit plan for the taxable year, $532,000, is determined by multiplying the amount treated as sales on the installment plan ($1,330,000), by the gross profit percentage (40 percent). (Corporation X will be able to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the district director that (A) since the gross profit percentage for all sales does not vary materially from the gross profit percentage for all sales made under the revolving credit plan, (B) since only an insubstantial amount of sales included in year-end account balances was made prior to the taxable year, and (C) since the prior year's gross profit percentage does not vary materially from the gross profit percentage for the taxable year, income from sales on the installment plan will be clearly reflected by applying the current year's gross profit percentage for all sales under the revolving credit plan treated as sales on the installment plan.)

(d) *Effective date.* This section applies for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1953, and ending after August 16, 1954, but does not apply for any taxable year beginning after December 31, 1986. For taxable years beginning after December 31, 1986, sales under a revolving credit plan shall not be treated as sales on the installment plan.

[T.D. 8269, 54 FR 46375, Nov. 3, 1989]

§ 1.453A–3 Requirements for adoption of or change to installment method by dealers in personal property.

(a) *In general.* A dealer (within the meaning of § 1.453A–1(c)(1)) may adopt or change to the installment method for a type or types of sales on the installment plan (within the meaning of § 1.453A–1(c)(3) and (d)) in the manner prescribed in this section. This section applies only to dealers and only with respect to their sales on the installment plan.

(b) *Time and manner of electing installment method reporting*—(1) *Time for election.* An election to adopt or change to the installment method for a type or types of sales must be made on an income tax return for the taxable year of the election, filed on or before the time specified (including extensions thereof) for filing such return.

(2) *Adoption of installment method.* A taxpayer who adopts the installment method for the first taxable year in which sales are made on an installment plan of any kind must indicate in the income tax return for that taxable year that the installment method of accounting is being adopted and specify the type or types of sales included within the election. If a taxpayer in the year of the initial election made only one type of sale on the installment plan, but during a subsequent taxable year makes another type of sale on the installment plan and adopts the installment method for that other type of sale, the taxpayer must indicate in the income tax return for the subsequent year that an election is being made to adopt the installment method of accounting for the additional type of sale.

(3) *Change to installment method.* A taxpayer who changes to the installment method for a particular type or types of sales on the installment plan in acordance with this section must, for each type of sale on the installment plan for which the installment method is to be used, attach a separate statement to the income tax return for the taxable year with respect to which the change is made. Each statement must show the method of accounting used in computing taxable income before the change and the type of sale on the installment plan for which the installment method is being elected.

(4) *Deemed elections.* A dealer (including a person who is a dealer as a result of the recharacterization of transactions as sales) is deemed to have elected the installment method if the dealer treats a sale on the installment plan as a transaction other than a sale

and fails to report the full amount of gain in the year of the sale. For example, if a transaction treated by a dealer as a lease is recharacterized by the Internal Revenue Service as a sale on the installment plan, the dealer will be deemed to have elected the installment method assuming the dealer failed to report the full amount of gain in the year of the transaction.

(c) *Consent.* A dealer may adopt or change to the installment method for sales on the installment plan without the consent of the Commissioner. However, a dealer may not change from the installment method to the accrual method of accounting or to any other method of accounting without the consent of the Commissioner.

(d) *Cut-off method for amounts previously accrued.* An election to change to the installment method for a type of sale applies only with respect to sales made on or after the first day of the taxable year of change. Thus, payments received in the taxable year of the change, or in subsequent years, in respect of an installment obligation which arose in a taxable year prior to the taxable year of change are not taken into account on the installment method, but rather must be accounted for under the taxpayer's method of accounting in use in the prior year.

(e) *Effective date.* This section applies to sales by dealers in taxable years ending after October 19, 1980, but generally does not apply to sales made after December 31, 1987. For sales made after December 31, 1987, sales by a dealer in personal or real property shall not be treated as sales on the installment plan. (However, see section 453(l)(2) for certain exceptions to this rule.) For rules relating to sales by dealers in taxable years ending before October 20, 1980, see 26 CFR 1.453–7 and 1.453–8 (rev. as of April 1, 1987).

[T.D. 8269, 54 FR 46375, Nov. 3, 1989]

§ 1.454–1 Obligations issued at discount.

(a) *Certain non-interest-bearing obligations issued at discount*—(1) *Election to include increase in income currently.* If a taxpayer owns—

(i) A non-interest-bearing obligation issued at a discount and redeemable for fixed amounts increasing at stated intervals (other than an obligation issued by a corporation after May 27, 1969, as to which ratable inclusion of original issue discount is required under section 1232(a)(3)), or

(ii) An obligation of the United States, other than a current income obligation, in which he retains his investment in a matured series E U.S. savings bond, or

(iii) A nontransferable obligation (whether or not a current income obligation) of the United States for which a series E U.S. savings bond was exchanged (whether or not at final maturity) in an exchange upon which gain is not recognized because of section 1037(a) (or so much of section 1031(b) as relates to section 1037),

and if the increase, if any, in redemption price of such obligation described in subdivision (i), (ii), or (iii) of this subparagraph during the taxable year (as described in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph) does not constitute income for such year under the method of accounting used in computing his taxable income, then the taxpayer may, at his election, treat the increase as constituting income for the year in which such increase occurs. If the election is not made and section 1037 (or so much of section 1031 as relates to section 1037) does not apply, the taxpayer shall treat the increase as constituting income for the year in which the obligation is redeemed or disposed of, or finally matures, whichever is earlier. Any such election must be made in the taxpayer's return and may be made for any taxable year. If an election is made with respect to any such obligation described in subdivision (i), (ii), or (iii) of this subparagraph, it shall apply also to all other obligations of the type described in such subdivisions owned by the taxpayer at the beginning of the first taxable year to which the election applies, and to those thereafter acquired by him, and shall be binding for the taxable year for which the return is filed and for all subsequent taxable years, unless the Commissioner permits the taxpayer to change to a different method of reporting income from such obligations. See section 446(e) and paragraph (e) of §1.446–1, relating to requirement respecting a change of accounting method. Although the election once made is binding upon the taxpayer, it does not apply to a transferee of the taxpayer.

(2) *Amount of increase in case of non-interest-bearing obligations.* In any case in which an election is made under section 454, the amount which accrues in any taxable year to which the election applies is measured by the actual increase in the redemption price occurring in that year. This amount does not accrue ratably between the dates on which the redemption price changes. For example, if two dates on which the redemption price increases (February 1 and August 1) fall within a taxable year and if the redemption price increases in the amount of 50 cents on each such date, the amount accruing in that year would be $1 ($0.50 on February 1 and $0.50 on August 1). If the taxpayer owns a non-interest-bearing obligation of the character described in subdivision (i), (ii), or (iii) of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph acquired prior to the first taxable year to which his election applies, he must also include in gross income for such first taxable year (i) the increase in the redemption price of such obligation occurring between the date of acquisition of the obligation and the first day of such first taxable year and (ii), in a case where a series E bond was exchanged for such obligation, the increase in the redemption price of such series E bond occurring between the date of acquisition of such series E bond and the date of the exchange.

(3) *Amount of increase in case of current income obligations.* If an election is made under section 454 and the taxpayer owns, at the beginning of the first taxable year to which the election applies, a current income obligation of the character described in subparagraph (1)(iii) of this paragraph acquired prior to such taxable year, he must also include in gross income for such first taxable year the increase in the redemption price of the series E bond which was surrendered to the United States in exchange for such current income obligation; the amount of the increase is that occurring between the date of acquisition of the series E bond and the date of the exchange.

(4) *Illustrations.* The application of this paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). Throughout the calendar year 1954, a taxpayer who uses the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting holds series E U.S. savings bonds having a maturity value of $5,000 and a redemption value at the beginning of the year 1954 of $4,050 and at the end of the year 1954 of $4,150. He purchased the bonds on January 1, 1949, for $3,750, and holds no other obligation of the type described in this section. If the taxpayer exercises the election in his return for the calendar year 1954, he is required to include $400 in taxable income with respect to such bonds. Of this amount, $300 represents the increase in the redemption price before 1954 and $100 represents the increase in the redemption price in 1954. The increases in redemption value occurring in subsequent taxable years are includible in gross income for such taxable years.

Example (2). In 1958 B, a taxpayer who uses the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting and the calendar year as his taxable year, purchased for $7,500 a series E United States savings bond with a face value of $10,000. In 1965, when the stated redemption value of the series E bond is $9,760, B surrenders it to the United States in exchange solely for a $10,000 series H U.S. current income savings bond in an exchange qualifying under section 1037(a), after paying $240 additional consideration. On the exchange of the series E bond for the series H bond in 1965, B realizes a gain of $2,260 ($9,760 less $7,500), none of which is recognized for that year by reason of section 1037(a). B retains the series H bond and redeems it at maturity in 1975 for $10,000, but in 1966 he exercises the election under section 454(a) in his return for that year with respect to five series E bonds he purchased in 1960. B is required to include in gross income for 1966 the increase in redemption price occurring before 1966 and in 1966 with respect to the series E bonds purchased in 1960; he is also required to include in gross income for 1966 the $2,260 increase in redemption price of the series E bond which was exchanged in 1965 for the series H bond.

(b) *Short-term obligations issued on a discount basis.* In the case of obligations of the United States or any of its possessions, or of a State, or Territory, or any political subdivision thereof, or of the District of Columbia, issued on a discount basis and payable without interest at a fixed maturity date not exceeding one year from the date of issue, the amount of discount at which such obligation originally sold does not accrue until the date on which such obligation is redeemed, sold, or otherwise disposed of. This rule applies regardless of the method of accounting used by the taxpayer. For examples illustrating rules for computation of income from sale or other disposition of certain obligations of the type described in this paragraph, see section 1221 and the regulations thereunder.

(c) *Matured U.S. savings bonds*—(1) *Inclusion of increase in income upon redemption or final maturity*. If a taxpayer (other than a corporation) holds—

(i) A matured series E U.S. savings bond,

(ii) An obligation of the United States, other than a current income obligation, in which he retains his investment in a matured series E U.S. savings bond, or

(iii) A nontransferable obligation (whether or not a current income obligation) of the United States for which a series E U.S. savings bond was exchanged (whether or not at final maturity) in an exchange upon which gain is not recognized because of section 1037(a) (or so much of section 1031(b) as relates to section 1037(a)),

the increase in redemption price of the series E bond in excess of the amount paid for such series E bond shall be included in the gross income of such taxpayer for the taxable year in which the obligation described in subdivision (i), (ii), or (iii) of this subparagraph is redeemed or disposed of, or finally matures, whichever is earlier, but only to the extent such increase has not previously been includible in the gross income of such taxpayer or any other taxpayer. If such obligation is partially redeemed before final maturity, or partially disposed of by being partially reissued to another owner, such increase in redemption price shall be included in the gross income of such taxpayer for such taxable year on a basis proportional to the total denomination of obligations redeemed or disposed of. The provisions of section 454 (c) and of this subparagraph shall not apply in the case of any taxable year for which the taxpayer's taxable income is computed under an accrual method of accounting or for a taxable year for which an election made by the taxpayer under section 454(a) and paragraph (a) of this section applies. For rules respecting the character of the gain realized upon the disposition or redemption of an obligation described in subdivision (iii) of this subparagraph, see paragraph (b) of §1.1037–1.

(2) *Illustrations*. The application of this paragraph may be illustrated by the following examples, in which it is assumed that the taxpayer uses the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting and the calendar year as his taxable year:

Example (1). On June 1, 1941, A purchased for $375 a series E U.S. savings bond which was redeemable at maturity (10 years from issue date) for $500. At maturity of the bond, A exercised the option of retaining the matured series E bond for the 10-year extended maturity period. On June 2, 1961, A redeemed the series E bond, at which time the stated redemption value was $674.60. A never elected under section 454(a) to include the annual increase in redemption price in gross income currently. Under section 454(c), A is required to include $299.60 ($674.60 less $375) in gross income for 1961 by reason of his redemption of the bond.

Example (2). The facts are the same as in example (2) in paragraph (a)(4) of this section. On redemption of the series H bond received in the exchange qualifying under section 1037(a), B realizes a gain of $2,260, determined as provided in example (5) in paragraph (b)(4) of §1.1037–1. None of this amount is includible in B's gross income for 1975, such amount having already been includible in his gross income for 1966 because of his election under section 454(a).

Example (3). C, who had elected under section 454(a) to include the annual increase in the redemption price of his non-interest-bearing obligations in gross income currently, owned a $1,000 series E U.S. savings bond, which was purchased on October 1, 1949, for $750, C died on February 1, 1955, when the redemption value of the bond was $820. The bond was immediately reissued to D, his only heir, who has not made an election under section 454(a). On January 15, 1960, when the redemption value of the bond is $1,000, D surrenders it to the United States in exchange solely for a $1,000 series H U.S. savings bond in an exchange qualifying under the provisions of section 1037(a). For 1960 D properly does not return any income from the exchange of bonds, although he returns the interest payments on the series H bond for the taxable years in which they are received. On September 1, 1964, prior to maturity of the series H bond, D redeems it for $1,000. For 1964, D must include $180 in gross income under section 454(c) from the redemption of the series H bond, that is, the amount of the increase in the redemption price of the series E bond ($1,000 less $820) occurring between February 1, 1955, and January 15, 1960, the period during which he owned the series E bond.

[T.D. 6500, 25 FR 11719, Nov. 26, 1960, as amended by T.D. 6935, 32 FR 15820, Nov. 17, 1967; T.D. 7154, 36 FR 24997, Dec. 28, 1971]

§ 1.455–1 Treatment of prepaid subscription income.

Effective with respect to taxable years beginning after December 31, 1957, section 455 permits certain taxpayers to elect with respect to a trade or business in connection with which prepaid subscription income is received, to include such income in gross income for the taxable years during which a liability exists to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical. If a taxpayer does not elect to treat prepaid subscription income under the provisions of section 455, such income is includible in gross income for the taxable year in which received by the taxpayer, unless under the method or practice of accounting used in computing taxable income such amount is to be properly accounted for as of a different period.

[T.D. 6591, 27 FR 1798, Feb. 27, 1962]

§ 1.455–2 Scope of election under section 455.

(a) If a taxpayer makes an election under section 455 and § 1.455–6 with respect to a trade or business, all prepaid subscription income from such trade or business shall be included in gross income for the taxable years during which the liability exists to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical. Such election shall be applicable to all prepaid subscription income received in connection with the trade or business for which the election is made; except that the taxpayer may further elect to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt (as described in section 455(d)(3) and paragraph (c) of § 1.455–5) the entire amount of any prepaid subscription income if the liability from which it arose is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt, hereinafter sometimes referred to as ‘‘within 12 months’’ election.

(b) If the taxpayer is engaged in more than one trade or business in which a liability is incurred to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical, a separate election 455 with respect to each such trade or business. In addition, a taxpayer may make a separate ‘‘within 12 months’’ election for each separate trade or business for which it has made an election under section 455.

(c) An election made under section 455 shall be binding for the first taxable year for which the election is made and for all subsequent taxable years, unless the taxpayer secures the consent of the Commissioner to the revocation of such election. Thus, in any case where the taxpayer has elected a method prescribed by section 455 for the inclusion of prepaid subscription income in gross income, such method of reporting income may not be changed without the prior approval of the Commissioner. In order to secure the Commissioner's consent to the revocation of such election, an application must be filed with the Commissioner in accordance with section 446(e) and the regulations thereunder. For purposes of subtitle A of the Code, the computation of taxable income under an election made under section 455 shall be treated as a method of accounting. For adjustments required by changes in method of accounting, see section 481 and the regulations thereunder.

(d) An election made under section 455 shall not apply to any prepaid subscription income received before the first taxable year to which the election applies. For example, Corporation M, which computes its taxable income under an accrual method of accounting and files its income tax returns on the calendar year basis, publishes a monthly magazine and customarily sells subscriptions on a 3-year basis. In 1958 it received $135,000 of 3-year prepaid subscription income for subscriptions beginning during 1958, and in 1959 it received $142,000 of prepaid subscription income for subscriptions beginning after December 31, 1958. In February 1959 it elected, with the consent of the Commissioner, to report its prepaid subscription income under the provisions of section 455 for the year 1959 and subsequent taxable years. The

$135,000 received in 1958 from prepaid subscriptions must be included in gross income in full in that year, and no part of such 1958 income shall be allocated to the years 1959, 1960, and 1961 during which M was under a liability to deliver its magazine. The $142,000 received in 1959 from prepaid subscriptions shall be allocated to the years 1959, 1960, 1961, and 1962.

(e) No election may be made under section 455 with respect to a trade or business if, in computing taxable income, the cash receipts and disbursements method of accounting is used with respect to such trade or business. However, if the taxpayer is on a ''combination'' method of accounting under section 446(c)(4) and the regulations thereunder, it may elect the benefits of section 455 if it uses an accrual method of accounting for subscription income

[T.D. 6591, 27 FR 1798, Feb. 27, 1962]

§ 1.455–3 Method of allocation.

(a) Prepaid subscription income to which section 455 applies shall be included in gross income for the taxable years during which the liability to which the income relates is discharged or is deemed to be discharged on the basis of the taxpayer's experience.

(b) For purposes of determining the period or periods over which the liability of the taxpayer extends, and for purposes of allocating prepaid subscription income to such periods, the taxpayer may aggregate similar transactions during the taxable year in any reasonable manner, provided the method of aggregation and allocation is consistently followed.

[T.D. 6591, 27 FR 1798, Feb. 27, 1962]

§ 1.455–4 Cessation of taxpayer's liability.

(a) If a taxpayer has elected to apply the provisions of section 455 to a trade or business in connection with which prepaid subscription income is received, and if its liability to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical ends for any reason, then so much of the prepaid subscription income attributable to such liability as was not includible in its gross income under section 455 for preceding taxable years shall be included in its gross income for the taxable year in which such liability ends. A taxpayer's liability may end, for example, because of the cancellation of a subscription. See section 381(c)(4) and the regulations thereunder for the treatment of prepaid subscription income in a transaction to which section 381(a) applies.

(b) If a taxpayer who has elected to apply the provisions of section 455 to a trade or business dies or ceases to exist, then so much of the prepaid subscription income attributable to such trade or business which was not includible in its gross income under section 455 for preceding taxable years shall be included in its gross income for the taxable year in which such death or cessation of existence occurs. See section 381(c)(4) and the regulations thereunder for the treatment of prepaid subscription income in a transaction to which section 381(a) applies.

[T.D. 6591, 27 FR 1799, Feb. 27, 1962]

§ 1.455–5 Definitions and other rules.

(a) *Prepaid subscription income.* (1) The term ''prepaid subscription income'' means any amount includible in gross income which is received in connection with, and is directly attributable to, a liability of the taxpayer which extends beyond the close of the taxable year in which such amount is received and which is income from a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical. For example where Corporation X, a publisher of newspapers, magazines, and other periodicals makes sales on a subscription basis and the purchaser pays the subscription price in advance, prepaid subscription income would include the amounts actually received by X in connection with its liability to furnish or deliver the newspaper, magazine, or other periodical.

(2) For purposes of section 455, prepaid subscription income does not include amounts received by a taxpayer in connection with sales of subscriptions on a prepaid basis where such taxpayer does not have the liability to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical. The provisions of this subparagraph may be illustrated by the following example. Corporation D has a contract with each of several large publishers which grants it the right to sell subscriptions

to their periodicals. Corporation D collects the subscription price from the subscribers, retains a portion thereof as its commission and remits the balance to the publishers. The amount retained by Corporation D represents commissions on the sale of subscriptions, and is not prepaid subscription income for purposes of section 455 since the commissions represent compensation for services rendered and are not directly attributable to a liability of Corporation D to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical.

(b) *Liability.* The term ''liability'' means a liability of the taxpayer to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical.

(c) *Receipt of prepaid subscription income.* For purposes of section 455, prepaid subscription income shall be treated as received during the taxable year for which it is includible in gross income under section 451, relating to general rule for taxable year of inclusion, without regard to section 455.

(d) *Treatment of prepaid subscription income under an established accounting method.* Notwithstanding the provisions of section 455 and §1.455–1, any taxpayer who, for taxable years beginning before January 1, 1958, has reported prepaid subscription income for income tax purposes under an established and consistent method or practice of deferring such income may continue to report such income in accordance with such method or practice for all subsequent taxable years to which section 455 applies without making an election under section 455.

[T.D. 6591, 27 FR 1799, Feb. 27, 1962]

§ 1.455–6 Time and manner of making election.

(a) *Election without consent.* (1) A taxpayer may, without consent, elect to treat prepaid subscription income of a trade or business under section 455 for the first taxable year—

(i) Which begins after December 31, 1957, and

(ii) In which there is received prepaid subscription income from the trade or business for which the election is made. Such an election shall be made not later than the time prescribed by law for filing the income tax return for such year (including extensions thereof), and shall be made by means of a statement attached to such return.

(2) The statement shall indicate that the taxpayer is electing to apply the provisions of section 455 to his trade or business, and shall contain the following information:

(i) The name and a description of the taxpayer's trade or business to which the election is to apply;

(ii) The method of accounting used in such trade or business;

(iii) The total amount of prepaid subscription income from such trade or business for the taxable year;

(iv) The period or periods over which the liability of the taxpayer to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical extends;

(v) The amount of prepaid subscription income applicable to each such period; and

(vi) A description of the method used in allocating the prepaid subscription income to each such period.

In any case in which prepaid subscription income is received from more than one trade or business, the statement shall set forth the required information with respect to each trade or business subject to the election.

(3) See paragraph (c) of this section for additional information required to be submitted with the statement if the taxpayer also elects to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt the entire amount of prepaid subscription income attributable to a liability which is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt.

(b) *Election with consent.* A taxpayer may, with the consent of the Commissioner, elect at any time to apply the provisions of section 455 to any trade or business in which it receives prepaid subscription income. The request for such consent shall be in writing, signed by the taxpayer or its authorized representative, and shall be addressed to the Commissioner of Internal Revenue, Attention: T:R:C, Washington, D.C. 20224. The request must be filed on or before the later of the following dates:

(1) 90 days after the beginning of the first taxable year to which the election is to apply or

(2) May 28, 1962, and must contain the information described in paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

See paragraph (c) of this section for additional information required to be submitted with the request if the taxpayer also elects to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt the entire amount of prepaid subscription income attributable to a liability which is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt.

(c) *''Within 12 months'' election.* (1) A taxpayer who elects to apply the provisions of section 455 to any trade or business may also elect to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt (as described in section 455(d)(3) and paragraph (c) of §1.455–5) the entire amount of any prepaid subscription income from such trade or business if the liability from which it arose is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt. Any such election is binding for the first taxable year for which it is effective and for all subsequent taxable years, unless the taxpayer secures permission from the Commissioner to treat such income differently. Application to revoke or change a ''within 12 months'' election shall be made in accordance with the provisions of section 446(e) and the regulations thereunder.

(2) The ''within 12 months'' election shall be made by including in the statement required by paragraph (a) of this section or the request described in paragraph (b) of this section, whichever is applicable, a declaration that the taxpayer elects to include such income in gross income in the taxable year of receipt, and the amount of such income. If the taxpayer is engaged in more than one trade or business for which the election under section 455 is made, it must include, in such statement or request, a declaration for each trade or business for which it makes the ''within 12 months'' election. See also paragraph (e) of §1.455–2.

(3) If the taxpayer does not make the ''within 12 months'' election for its trade or business at the time prescribed for making the election to include prepaid subscription income in gross income for the taxable years during which its liability to furnish or deliver a newspaper, magazine, or other periodical exists for such trade or business, but later wishes to make such election, it must apply for permission from the Commissioner. Such application shall be made in accordance with the provisions of section 446(e) and the regulations thereunder.

[T.D. 6591, 27 FR 1799, Feb. 27, 1962]

§1.456–1 Treatment of prepaid dues income.

Effective for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1960, a taxpayer which is a membership organization (as described in paragraph (c) of §1.456–5) and which receives prepaid dues income as described in paragraph (a) of §1.456–5 in connection with its trade or business of rendering services or making available membership privileges may elect under section 456 to include such income in gross income ratably over the taxable years during which its liability (as described in paragraph (b) of §1.456–5) to render such services or extend such privileges exists, if such liability does not extend over a period of time in excess of 36 months. If the taxpayer does not elect to treat prepaid dues income under section 456, or if such income may not be reported under section 456, as for example, where the income relates to a liability to render services or make available membership privileges which extends beyond 36 months, then such income is includible in gross income for the taxable year in which it is received (as described in paragraph (d) of §1.456–5).

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16394, Nov. 30, 1967]

§1.456–2 Scope of election under section 456.

(a) An election made under section 456 and §1.456–6, shall be applicable to all prepaid dues income received in connection with the trade or business for which the election is made. However, the taxpayer may further elect to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt the entire amount of any prepaid dues income attributable to a liability extending beyond the close of the taxable year but ending within 12 months after the date of receipt, hereinafter referred to as the ''within 12 months'' election.

(b) If the taxpayer is engaged in more than one trade or business in connection with which prepaid dues income is received, a separate election may be made under section 456 with respect to each such trade or business. In addition, a taxpayer may make a separate ''within 12 months'' election for each separate trade or business for which it has made an election under section 456.

(c) A section 456 election and a ''within 12 months'' election shall be binding for the first taxable year for which the election is made and for all subsequent taxable years, unless the taxpayer secures the consent of the Commissioner to the revocation of either election. In order to secure the Commissioner's consent to the revocation of the section 456 election or the ''within 12 months'' election, an application must be filed with the Commissioner in accordance with section 446(e) and the regulations thereunder. However, an application for consent to revoke the section 456 election or the ''within 12 months'' election in the case of all taxable years which end before November 30, 1967 must be filed on or before February 28, 1968. For purposes of Subtitle A of the Code, the computation of taxable income under an election made under section 456 or under the ''within 12 months'' election shall be treated as a method of accounting. For adjustments required by changes in method of accounting, see section 481 and the regulations thereunder.

(d) Except as provided in section 456(d) and §1.456–7, an election made under section 456 shall not apply to any prepaid dues income received before the first taxable year to which the election applies. For example, Corporation X, a membership organization which files its income tax returns on a calendar year basis, customarily sells 3-year memberships, payable in advance. In 1961 it received $160,000 of prepaid dues income for 3-year memberships beginning during 1961, and in 1962 it received $185,000 of prepaid dues income for 3-year memberships beginning on January 1, 1962. In March 1962 it elected, with the consent of the Commissioner, to report its prepaid dues income under the provisions of section 456 for the year 1962 and subsequent taxable years. The $160,000 received in 1961 from prepaid dues must be included in gross income in full in that year, and except as provided in section 456(d) and §1.456–7, no part of such income shall be allocated to the taxable years 1962, 1963, and 1964 during which X was under a liability to make available its membership privileges. The $185,000 received in 1962 from prepaid dues income shall be allocated to the years 1962, 1963, and 1964.

(e) No election may be made under section 456 with respect to a trade or business if, in computing taxable income, the cash receipts and disbursements method (or a hybrid thereof) of accounting is used with respect to such trade or business, unless the combination of the section 456 election and the taxpayer's hybrid method of accounting does not result in a material distortion of income.

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16394, Nov. 30, 1967; 32 FR 17479, Dec. 6, 1967]

§ 1.456–3 Method of allocation.

(a) Prepaid dues income for which an election has been made under section 456 shall be included in gross income over the period of time during which the liability to render services or make available membership privileges exists. The liability to render the services or make available the membership privileges shall be deemed to exist ratably over the period of time such services are required to be rendered, or such membership privileges are required to be made available. Thus, the prepaid dues income shall be included in gross income ratably over the period of the membership contract. For example, Corporation X, a membership organization, which files its income tax returns on a calendar year basis, elects, for its taxable year beginning January 1, 1961, to report its prepaid dues income in accordance with the provisions of section 456. On March 31, 1961, it sells a 2-year membership for $48 payable in advance, the membership to extend from May 1, 1961, to April 30, 1963. X shall include in its gross income for the taxable year 1961 $\frac{8}{24}$ of the $48, or $16, and for the taxable year 1962 $\frac{12}{24}$ of the $48, or $24, and for the taxable year 1963 $\frac{4}{24}$ of the $48, or $8.

(b) For purposes of determining the period or periods over which the liability of the taxpayer exists, and for purposes of allocating prepaid dues income to such periods, the taxpayer may aggregate similar transactions during the taxable year in any reasonable manner, provided the method of aggregation and allocation is consistently followed.

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16395, Nov. 30, 1967]

§ 1.456–4 Cessation of liability or existence.

(a) If a taxpayer has elected to apply the provisions of section 456 to a trade or business in connection with which prepaid dues income is received, and if the taxpayer's liability to render services or make available membership privileges ends for any reason, as for example, because of the cancellation of a membership then so much of the prepaid dues income attributable to such liability as was not includible in the taxpayer's gross income under section 456 for preceding taxable years shall be included in gross income for the taxable year in which such liability ends. This paragraph shall not apply to amounts includible in gross income under § 1.456–7.

(b) If a taxpayer which has elected to apply the provisions of section 456 ceases to exist, then the prepaid dues income which was not includible in gross income under section 456 for preceding taxable years shall be included in the taxpayer's gross income for the taxable year in which such cessation of existence occurs. This paragraph shall not apply to amounts includible in gross income under § 1.456–7.

(c) If a taxpayer is a party to a transaction to which section 381(a) applies and the taxpayer's method of accounting with respect to prepaid dues income is used by the acquiring corporation under the provisions of section 381(c)(4), then neither the liability nor the existence of the taxpayer shall be deemed to have ended or ceased. In such cases see section 381(c)(4) and the regulations thereunder for the treatment of the portion of prepaid dues income which was not included in gross income under section 456 for preceding taxable years.

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16395, Nov. 30, 1967]

§ 1.456–5 Definitions and other rules.

(a) *Prepaid dues income.* (1) The term ''prepaid dues income'' means any amount for membership dues includible in gross income which is received by a membership organization in connection with, and is directly attributable to, a liability of the taxpayer to render services or make available membership privileges over a period of time which extends beyond the close of the taxable year in which such amount is received.

(2) For purposes of section 456, prepaid dues income does not include amounts received by a taxpayer in connection with sales of memberships on a prepaid basis where the taxpayer does not have the liability to furnish the services or make available the membership privileges. For example, where a taxpayer has a contract with several membership organizations to sell memberships in such organizations and retains a portion of the amounts received from the sale of such memberships and remits the balance to the membership organizations, the amounts retained by such taxpayer represent commissions and do not constitute prepaid dues income for purposes of section 456.

(b) *Liability.* The term ''liability'' means a liability of the taxpayer to render services or make available membership privileges over a period of time which does not exceed 36 months. Thus, if during the taxable year a taxpayer sells memberships for more than 36 months and also memberships for 36 months or less, section 456 does not apply to the income from the sale of memberships for more than 36 months. For the purpose of determining the duration of a liability, a bona fide renewal of a membership shall not be considered to be a part of the existing membership.

(c) *Membership organization.* (1) The term ''membership organization'' means a corporation, association, federation, or other similar organization meeting the following requirements:

(i) It is organized without capital stock of any kind.

(ii) Its charter, bylaws, or other written agreement or contract expressly prohibits the distribution of any part of the net earnings directly or indirectly, in money, property, or services, to any member, and

(iii) No part of the net earnings of which is in fact distributed to any member either directly or indirectly, in money, property, or services.

(2) For purposes of this paragraph an increase in services or reduction in dues to all members shall generally not be considered distributions of net earnings.

(3) If a corporation, association, federation, or other similar organization subsequent to the time it elects to report its prepaid dues income in accordance with the provisions of section 456, (i) issues any kind of capital stock either to any member or nonmember, (ii) amends its charter, bylaws, or other written agreement or contract to permit distributions of its net earnings to any member or, (iii) in fact, distributes any part of its net earnings either in money, property, or services to any member, then immediately after such event the organization shall not be considered a membership organization within the meaning of section 456(e)(3).

(d) *Receipt of prepaid dues income.* For purposes of section 456, prepaid dues income shall be treated as received during the taxable year for which it is includible in gross income under section 451, relating to the general rule for taxable year of inclusion, without regard to section 456.

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16395, Nov. 30, 1967]

§ 1.456–6 Time and manner of making election.

(a) *Election without consent.* A taxpayer may make an election under section 456 without the consent of the Commissioner for the first taxable year beginning after December 31, 1960, in which it receives prepaid dues income in the trade or business for which such election is made. The election must be made not later than the time prescribed by law for filing the income tax return for such year (including extensions thereof). The election must be made by means of a statement attached to such return. In addition, there should be attached a copy of a typical membership contract used by the organization and a copy of its charter, bylaws, or other written agreement or contract of organization or association. The statement shall indicate that the taxpayer is electing to apply the provisions of section 456 to the trade or business, and shall contain the following information:

(1) The taxpayer's name and a description of the trade or business to which the election is to apply.

(2) The method of accounting used for prepaid dues income in the trade or business during the first taxable year for which the election is to be effective and during each of 3 preceding taxable years, and if there was a change in the method of accounting for prepaid dues income during such 3-year period, a detailed explanation of such change including the adjustments necessary to prevent duplications or omissions of income.

(3) Whether any type of deferral method for prepaid dues income has been used during any of the 3 taxable years preceding the first taxable year for which the election is effective. Where any type of such deferral method has been used during this period, an explanation of the method and a schedule showing the amounts received in each such year and the amounts deferred to each succeeding year.

(4) A schedule with appropriate explanations showing:

(i) The total amount of prepaid dues income received in the trade or business in the first taxable year for which the election is effective and the amount of such income to be included in each taxable year in accordance with the election,

(ii) The total amount, if any, of prepayments of dues received in the first taxable year for which the election is effective which are directly attributable to a liability of the taxpayer to render services or make available membership privileges over a period of time in excess of 36 months, and

(iii) The total amount, if any, of prepaid dues income received in the trade or business in—

(a) The taxable year preceding the first taxable year for which the election is effective if all memberships sold by the taxpayer are for periods of 1 year or less,

(b) Each of the 2 taxable years preceding the first taxable year for which the election is effective if any memberships are sold for periods in excess of 1

year but none are sold for periods in excess of 2 years, or

(c) Each of the 3 taxable years preceding the first taxable year for which the election is effective if any memberships are sold for periods in excess of 2 years.

In each case there shall be set forth the amount of such income which would have been includible in each taxable year had the election been effective for the years for which the information is required.

In any case in which prepaid dues income is received from more than one trade or business, the statement shall set forth separately the required information with respect to each trade or business for which the election is made. See paragraph (c) of this section for additional information required to be submitted with the statement if the taxpayer also elects to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt the entire amount of prepaid dues income attributable to a liability which is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt.

(b) *Election with consent.* A taxpayer may elect with the consent of the Commissioner, to apply the provisions of section 456 to any trade or business in which it receives prepaid dues income. The request for such consent shall be in writing, signed by the taxpayer or its authorized representative, and shall be addressed to the Commissioner of Internal Revenue, Washington, D.C. 20224. The request must be filed on or before the later of the following dates:

(1) 90 days after the beginning of the first taxable year to which the election is to apply, or

(2) February 28, 1968 and should contain the information described in paragraph (a) of this section.

See paragraph (c) of this section for additional information required to be submitted with the request if the taxpayer also elects to include in gross income for the taxable year of receipt the entire amount of prepaid dues income attributable to a liability which is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt.

(c) *''Within 12 months'' election.* (1) The ''within 12 months'' election shall be made by including in the statement required by paragraph (a) of this section or the request described in paragraph (b) of this section, whichever is applicable, a declaration that the taxpayer elects to include such income in gross income in the taxable year of receipt, and the amount of such income for each taxable year to which the election is to apply which has ended prior to the time such statement or request is filed. If the taxpayer is engaged in more than one trade or business for which the election under section 456 is made, it must include, in such statement or request, a declaration for each trade or business for which it wishes to make the ''within 12 months'' election.

(2) If the taxpayer does not make the ''within 12 months'' election for a trade or business at the time it makes the election under paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, but later wishes to make such election, it must apply for permission from the Commissioner. Such application shall be made in accordance with the provisions of section 446(e).

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16395, Nov. 30, 1967; 32 FR 17479, Dec. 6, 1967]

§ 1.456–7 Transitional rule.

(a) Under section 456(d)(1), a taxpayer making an election under section 456 shall include in its gross income for the first taxable year to which the election applies and for each of the 2 succeeding taxable years not only that portion of prepaid dues income which is includible in gross income for each such taxable year under section 456(a), but also an additional amount equal to that portion of the total prepaid dues income received in each of the 3 taxable years preceding the first taxable year to which the election applies which would have been includible in gross income for such first taxable year and such 2 succeeding taxable years had the election under section 456 been effective during such 3 preceding taxable years. In computing such additional amounts—

(1) In the case of taxpayers who did not include in gross income for the taxable year preceding the first taxable year for which the election is effective, that portion of the prepaid dues income received in such year attributable to a liability which is to end within 12 months after the date of receipt, no effect shall be given to a ''within 12

months'' election made under paragraph (c) of § 1.456–6, and

(2) There shall be taken into account only prepaid dues income arising from a trade or business with respect to which an election is made under section 456 and § 1.456–6.

Section 481 and the regulations thereunder shall have no application to the additional amounts includible in gross income under section 456(d) and this section, but section 481 and the regulations thereunder shall apply to prevent other amounts from being duplicated or omitted.

(b) A taxpayer who makes an election with respect to prepaid dues income, and who includes in gross income for any taxable year to which the election applies an additional amount computed under section 456(d)(1) and paragraph (a) of this section, shall be permitted under section 456(d)(2) to deduct for such taxable year and for each of the 4 succeeding taxable years an amount equal to one-fifth of such additional amount, but only to the extent that such additional amount was also included in the taxpayer's gross income for any of the 3 taxable years preceding the first taxable year to which such election applies. The taxpayer shall maintain books and records in sufficient detail to enable the district director to determine upon audit that the additional amounts were included in the taxpayer's gross income for any of the 3 taxable years preceding such first taxable year. If, however, the taxpayer ceases to exist, as described in paragraph (b) of § 1.456–4, and there is included in gross income, under such paragraph, of the year of cessation the entire portion of prepaid dues income not previously includible in gross income under section 456 for preceding taxable years (other than for amounts received prior to the first year for which an election was made), all the amounts not previously deducted under this paragraph shall be permitted as a deduction in the year of cessation of existence.

(c) The provisions of this section may be illustrated by the following example:

Example. (1) Assume that X Corporation, a membership organization qualified to make the election under section 456, elects to report its prepaid dues income in accordance with the provisions of section 456 for its taxable year ending December 31, 1961. Assume further that X Corporation receives in the middle of each taxable year $3,000 of prepaid dues income in connection with a liability to render services over a 3-year period beginning with the date of receipt. Under section 456(a), X Corporation will report income received in 1961 and subsequent years as follows:

Year of receipt	Total receipts	1961	1962	1963	1964	1965	1966	1967	1968
1961	$3,000	$500	$1,000	$1,000	$500				
1962	3,000		500	1,000	1,000	$500			
1963	3,000			500	1,000	1,000	$500		
1964	3,000				500	1,000	1,000	$500	
1965	3,000					500	1,000	1,000	$500
1966	3,000						500	1,000	1,000
1967	3,000							500	1,000
1968	3,000								500
Total reportable under section 456(a)		500	1,500	2,500	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000

(2) Under section 456(d) (1), X Corporation must include in its gross income for the first taxable year to which the election applies and for each of the 2 succeeding taxable years, the amounts which would have been included in those years had the election been effective 3 years earlier. If the election had been effective in 1958, the following amounts received in 1958, 1959, and 1960 would have been reported in 1961 and subsequent years:

Year of receipt	Amount received	Years of including additional amounts		
		1961	1962	1963
1958	$3,000	$500		
1959	3,000	1,000	$500	
1960	3,000	1,000	1,000	$500

Year of receipt	Amount received	Years of including additional amounts		
		1961	1962	1963
Total additional amounts to be included under section 456(d)(1)	2,500	1,500	500	

(3) Having included the additional amounts as required by section 456(d)(1), and assuming such amounts were actually included in gross income in the 3 taxable years preceding the first taxable year for which the election is effective, X Corporation is entitled to deduct under section 456(d)(2) in the year of inclusion and in each of the succeeding 4 years an amount equal to one-fifth of the amounts included, as follows:

Year of inclusion	Amount	Years of deduction						
		1961	1962	1963	1964	1965	1966	1967
1961	$2,500	$500	$500	$500	$500	$500	....	....
1962	1,500	....	300	300	300	300	$300	....
1963	500	....	....	100	100	100	100	$10
Total amount deductible under section 456(d)(2)	500	800	900	900	900	400	100	

(4) The net result of the inclusions under section 456(d)(1) and the deductions under section 456(d)(2) may be summarized as follows:

	1961	1962	1963	1964	1965	1966	1967	1968
Amount includible under section 456(a)	$500	$1,500	$2,500	$3,000	$3,000	$3,000	$3,000	$3,000
Amount includible under section 456(d)(1)	2,500	1,500	500	....	....	....	....	....
Total	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000	3,000
Amount deductible under section 456(d)(2)	500	800	900	900	900	400	100	....
Net amount reportable under section 456	2,500	2,200	2,100	2,100	2,100	2,600	2,900	3,000

[T.D. 6937, 32 FR 16396, Nov. 30. 1967]

§ 1.457–1 Compensation deferred under eligible State deferred compensation plans.

(a) *Year of inclusion in gross income*—(1) *In general.* For taxable years beginning after December 31, 1978, section 457(a) provides that amounts deferred (within the meaning of § 1.457–1(d)(3)) under an eligible State deferred compensation plan that satisfies the requirements of § 1.457–2 (an ‘‘eligible plan’’) are includible in gross income only for the taxable year in which paid or otherwise made available to the participant or beneficiary under the plan.

(2) *Maximum deferral; in general.* Under section 457(c)(1), the exclusion from gross income described in this paragraph (a) does not apply to compensation deferred under one or more eligible plans to the extent that the compensation so deferred during a participant's taxable year exceeds the greater of—

(i) $7,500, or,

(ii) As applicable, the sum of the plan ceilings determined under § 1.457–2(f), to the extent such sum does not exceed $15,000.

(3) *Maximum deferral; exclusions under section 403(b) taken into account.* Under section 457(c)(2), for a participant's taxable year for which an amount is contributed to an annuity contract described in section 403(b) (including a custodial account described in section 403(b)(7)) on behalf of the participant, subparagraph (2) of this paragraph (a) is applied by substituting—

(i) For $7,500, an amount equal to $7,500, less the amount excludable from the participant's gross income under section 403(b) for the taxable year,

(ii) For the sum of the plan ceilings determined under § 1.457–2(f), an amount equal to the sum of the plan ceilings determined under § 1.457–2(f), less the amount excludable from the participant's gross income under section 403(b) for the taxable year, if such amount is not taken into account under such § 1.457–2(f), and

(iii) For $15,000, an amount equal to $15,000, less the amount excludable from the participant's gross income under section 403(b) for the taxable year.

(b) *Amounts made available to participant or beneficiary*—(1) *In general.* For purposes of section 457(a) and this section, amounts deferred under an eligible plan will not be considered made available to the participant or beneficiary if under the plan the participant or beneficiary may irrevocably elect, prior to the time any such amounts become payable, to defer payment of some or all of such amounts to a fixed or determinable future time. In addition, amounts deferred (including amounts previously deferred) under an eligible plan will not be considered made available to the participant solely because the participant is permitted to choose among various investment modes under the plan for the investment of such amounts whether before or after payments have commenced under the plan.

(2) *Examples.* Further examples of when amounts deferred will or will not be considered as being made available to the participant or beneficiary are provided below:

Example (1). (i) C, an individual, is a participant in an eligible State deferred compensation plan that provides the following:

(A) The total of the amounts deferred under the plan is payable to the participant in 120 substantially equal monthly installments commencing on the date 30 days after the participant attains normal retirement age under the plan (age 65), unless the participant elects, within the 90 day period ending on the date the participant attains normal retirement age, to receive a single sum payment of the deferred amounts. The single sum payment is payable to a participant on the date the first of the monthly payment would otherwise be payable to the participant.

(B) If a participant separates from the service of the State before attaining normal retirement age, the total of the amounts deferred under the plan is payable to the participant in a single sum payment on the date 90 days after the date of the separation, unless, before the date 30 days after the separation, the participant elects not to receive the single sum payment. The election is irrevocable. If the participant makes the election, the total of the amounts deferred under the plan is payable to the participant as described in (A), either in monthly installments or, at the election of the participant, in a single sum payment.

(ii) On June 6, 1982, C, a calendar year taxpayer aged 59, separates from the service of the State. On June 18, 1982, C elects not to receive the single sum payment payable on account of the separation. Because of C's election, no amount deferred under the plan is considered made available in 1982 by reason of C's right to receive the single sum payment.

(iii) On February 6, 1988, C attains age 65. C did not, within the 90 day period elect the single sum payment that is payable in lieu of the monthly installments. Amounts deferred under the plan are includible in C's gross income as they are paid to C in the monthly installments. No amount is considered made available by reason of C's right to elect the single sum payment.

Example (2). Assume the same facts as in example (1), except that the plan provides that notwithstanding that monthly installments have commenced under the plan, as described in (i)(A), the participant may, without restriction, elect to receive all or any portion of the amount remaining payable to the participant. The total of the amounts deferred under the plan is considered made available in 1988.

Example (3). Assume the same facts as in example (1), except that the plan provides that once monthly installment payments have commenced under the plan, as described in (i)(A), the participant may accelerate the payment of the amount remaining payable to the participant upon the occurrence of an unforeseeable emergency as described in § 1.457–2(h)(4) in an amount not exceeding that described in § 1.457–2(h)(5). No amount is considered made available to C on account of C's right to accelerate payments upon the occurrence of an unforeseeable emergency.

Example (4). Under an eligible plan of which individual D is a participant, normal retirement age is age 65 at which time payments must begin. Payments may begin earlier upon a separation from the service. Under the plan, a participant who separates from the service before age 65 or the participant's beneficiary (if the separation is due to the participant's death) may elect to defer the distribution of the amounts deferred until the year in which the participant attains or would have attained age 65. This election may be made only prior to the time any payments commence and once made may not be revoked. If such an election is made, the participant, former participant, or beneficary need not elect the method of payment, or if one is elected may change the method elected, until the date 30 days preceding the date upon which payments are to commence. No amount is considered made available by reason of D's right to defer the distribution of the amounts deferred until age 65, nor on account of D's right to delay the election of the method of payout. Similarly, if D dies at age 60, no amount is considered made available to D's beneficiary by reason of the beneficiary's right to defer the distribution of the amounts deferred until the year in which D would have attained age 65, nor on account of the beneficiary's right to delay the election of the method of payout.

Example (5). Under an eligible plan of which individual E is a participant, the maximum that may be deferred in any taxable year is 33⅓% of includible compensation, not to exceed $7,500. The plan does not provide for a catch-up deferral under section 457(b)(3). In one taxable year, E elects to have amounts deferred in excess of the limitation provided for under the plan. The amounts deferred in excess of the limitation will be considered to have been made available to E in the taxable year in which deferred.

Example (6). Assume the same facts as in example (5), except that E's employer also contributes amounts for the purchase of an annuity contract under section 403(b). In one taxable year, E has amounts contributed for the annuity within the limitations of section 403(b)(2), and also has amounts deferred under the eligible plan for the same year. The aggregate of the amounts contributed for the annuity contract and the amounts deferred under the plan exceed the deferral limitations under the plan. The excess deferrals will be considered made available to E in the year in which the amounts were deferred.

Example (7). Under an eligible plan of which F is a participant, amounts deferred have been invested in a money market investment fund. The plan then transfers the amounts deferred to a life insurance company for the purchase of life insurance contracts as an investment medium. However, the entity sponsoring the plan (1) retains all of the incidents of ownership of the contracts, (2) is the sole beneficiary under the contracts, and (3) is under no obligation to transfer the contracts or to pass through the proceeds of the contracts to any participant or a beneficiary of any participant. The movement of the amounts deferred to the life insurance company (whether or not made at the request of any plan participant) will not be considered to make the amounts available to the plan's participants. The cost of current life insurance protection under the life insurance contracts will not be considered made available to the plan's participants.

(c) *Life insurance proceeds and death benefits paid under eligible plan.* No amount received or made available under an eligible plan is excludable from gross income under section 101(a) (relating to life insurance contracts) or section 101(b) (relating to employees' death benefits).

(d) *Definitions.* For purposes of §§1.457–1 through 1.457–4:

(1) *Participant.* ''Participant'' means an individual who is eligible under §1.457–2(d) to defer compensation under the plan.

(2) *Beneficiary.* ''Beneficiary'' means a beneficiary of a participant, a participant's estate, or any other person whose interest in the plan is derived from the participant.

(3) *Amounts deferred.* ''Amount(s) deferred'' under an eligible plan means compensation deferred under the plan, plus income attributable to compensation so deferred. Income attributable to compensation deferred under an eligible plan includes gain from the disposition of property. The term ''amounts deferred'' includes amounts deferred in taxable years beginning before January 1, 1979, if such amounts were deferred under a plan described in §1.457–2(b), and such amounts were made a part of an eligible plan.

[T.D. 7836, 47 FR 42337, Sept. 27, 1982]

§1.457–2 Eligible State deferred compensation plan defined.

(a) *In general.* For purposes of §§1.457–1 through 1.457–4, an ''eligible State deferred compensation plan'' (sometimes referred to as ''eligible plan'') is a plan satisfying the requirements of paragraphs (c) through (k) of this section.

(b) *Plan.* For purposes of this section and §1.457–3, the term ''plan'' includes any agreement or arrangement between a State (within the meaning of paragraph (c) of this section) and a participant or participants, under which the payment of compensation is deferred, but only if such agreement or arrangement is not described in §1.457–3(b).

(c) *State.* The plan must be established and maintained by a State. For this purpose, the term ''State'' includes:

(1) The 50 states of the United States and the District of Columbia;

(2) A political subdivision of a State;

(3) Any agency or instrumentality of a State or political subdivision of a State;

(4) An organization that is exempt from tax under section 501(a) and engaged primarily in providing electrical service on a mutual or cooperative basis; and

(5) An organization that is described in section 501(c)(4) or (6) and exempt from tax under section 501(a) and at least 80% of the members of which are organizations described in subparagraph (4).

Where it appears in this § 1.457–2, the term ''State'' means the entity described in this paragraph (c) that sponsors the plan.

(d) *Participants.* The plan must provide that only individuals who perform services for the State, either as an employee of the State or as an independent contractor, may defer compensation under the plan.

(e) *Maximum deferrals*—(1) *In general.* The plan must provide that the amount of compensation that may be deferred under the plan for a taxable year of a participant shall not exceed an amount specifed in the plan (the ''plan ceiling''). Except as described in paragraph (f) of this section, a plan ceiling shall not exceed the lesser of:

(i) $7,500, or

(ii) 33⅓% of the participant's includible compensation for the taxable year, reduced by any amount excludable from the participant's gross income for the taxable year under section 403(b) on account of contributions made by the State.

(2) *Includible compensation.* For purposes of this section, a participant's includible compensation for a taxable year includes only compensation from the State that is attributable to services performed for the State and that is includible in the participant's gross income for the taxable year. Accordingly, a participant's includible compensation for a taxable year does not include an amount payable by the State that is excludable from the employee's gross income under section 457(a) and § 1.457–1 or under section 403(b) (relating to annuity contracts purchased by section 501(c)(3) organizations or public schools), section 105(d) (relating to wage continuation plans) or section 911 (relating to citizens or residents of the United States living abroad). A participant's includible compensation for a taxable year is determined without regard to any community property laws.

(3) *Compensation taken into account at its present value.* For purposes of subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, compensation deferred under a plan shall be taken into account at its value in the plan year in which deferred. However, if the compensation deferred is subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture (as defined in section 457(e)(3)), such compensation shall be taken into account at its value in the plan year in which such compensation is no longer subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture.

(f) *Limited catch-up*—(1) *In general.* The plan may provide that, for 1 or more of the participant's last 3 taxable years ending before the participant attains normal retirement age, the plan ceiling is an amount not in excess of the lesser of:

(i) $15,000, reduced by any amount excludable from the participant's gross income for the taxable year under section 403(b) on account of contributions made by the State, or

(ii) The amount determined under subparagraph (2) of this paragraph.

(2) *Underutilized limitations.* The amount determined under this subparagraph (2) is the sum of:

(i) The plan ceiling established under paragraph (e)(1) of this section for the taxable year, plus

(ii) The plan ceiling established under paragraph (e)(1) of this section for any prior taxable year or years, less the amount of compensation deferred under the plan for such prior taxable year or years.

A prior taxable year shall be taken into account under subdivision (ii) of this subparagraph (2) only if (A) it begins after December 31, 1978, (B) the participant was eligible to participate in the plan during all or any portion of the taxable year, and (C) compensation deferred (if any) under the plan during the taxable year was subject to a plan ceiling established under paragraph (e)(1) of this section. A participant will be considered eligible to participate in the plan for a taxable year if the participant is described in paragraph (d) of this section for any part of that taxable year. A prior taxable year includes a taxable year in which the participant was eligible to participate in an eligible plan sponsored by a different entity, provided that the entities sponsoring the plans are located within the same State as that term is used in §1.457–2(c)(1).

(3) *Restriction on limited catch-up.* The plan shall not provide that a participant may elect to have the limited catch-up provision of this paragraph (f) apply more than once, whether or not the limited catch-up is utilized in less than all of the three taxable years ending before the participant attains normal retirement age, and whether or not the participant or former participant rejoins the plan or participates in another eligible plan after retirement. For example, if the participant elects to utilize the limited catch-up only for the one taxable year ending before normal retirement age, and, after retirement at that age, the participant renders services for the State as an independent contractor or otherwise, the plan may not provide that the participant may utilize the limited catch-up for any of the taxable years subsequent to retirement.

(4) *Normal retirement age.* For purposes of this paragraph (f), normal retirement age may be specified in the plan. If no normal retirement age is specified in the plan, then the normal retirement age is the later of the latest normal retirement age specified in the basic pension plan of the State, or age 65. A plan may define normal retirement age as any range of ages ending no later than age 70½ and beginning no earlier than the earliest age at which the participant has the right to retire under the State's basic pension plan without consent of the State and to receive immediate retirement benefits without actuarial or similar reduction because of retirement before some later specified age in the State's basic pension plan. The plan may further provide that in the case of a participant who continues to work beyond the ages specified in the preceding two sentences, the normal retirement age shall be that date or age designated by the participant, but such date or age shall not be later than the mandatory retirement age provided by the State, or the date or age at which the participant separates from the service with the State.

(g) *Agreement for deferral.* The plan must provide that, in general, compensation is to be deferred for any calendar month only if an agreement providing for such deferral has been entered into before the first day of the month. However, a plan may provide that, with respect to a new employee, compensation is to be deferred for the calendar month during which the participant first becomes an employee, if an agreement providing for such deferral is entered into on or before the first day on which the participant becomes an employee.

(h) *Payments under the plan*—(1) *In general.* The plan may not provide that amounts payable under the plan will be paid or made available to a participant or beneficiary before the participant separates from service with the State, or, if the plan provides for payment in the case of an unforeseeable emergency, before the participant incurs an unforeseeable emergency.

(2) *Separation from service; general rule.* An employee is separated from service with the State if there is a separation from the service within the meaning of section 402(e)(4)(A)(iii), relating to lump sum distributions, and on account of the participant's death or retirement.

(3) *Separation from service; independent contractor*—(i) *In general.* An independent contractor is considered separated from service with the State upon the expiration of the contract (or in the case of more than one contract, all contracts) under which services are performed for the State, if the expiration constitutes a good-faith and complete termination of the contractual relationship. An expiration will not constitute a good faith and complete termination of the contractual relationship if the State anticipates a renewal of a contractual relationship or the independent contractor becoming an employee. For this purpose, a State is considered to anticipate the renewal of the contractual relationship with an independent contractor if it intends to again contract for the services provided under the expired contract, and neither the State nor the independent

contractor has eliminated the independent contractor as a possible provider of services under any such new contract. Further, a State is considered to intend to again contract for the services provided under an expired contract, if the State's doing so is conditioned only upon the State's incurring a need for the services, or the availability of funds or both.

(ii) *Special rule.* Notwithstanding subdivision (i), if, with respect to amounts payable to a participant who is an independent contractor, a plan provides that—

(A) No amount shall be paid to the participant before a date at least 12 months after the day on which the contract expires under which services are performed for the State (or, in the case of more than one contract, all such contracts expire), and

(B) No amount payable to the participant on that date shall be paid to the participant if, after the expiration of the contract (or contracts) and before that date, the participant performs services for the State as an independent contractor or an employee,

the plan is considered to satisfy the requirement described in subparagraph (1) that no amounts payable under the plan will be paid or made available to the participant before the participant separates from service with the State.

(4) *Unforeseeable emergency.* For purposes of this paragraph (h), an unforeseeable emergency is, and if the plan provides for payment in the case of an unforeseeable emergency must be defined in the plan as, severe financial hardship to the participant resulting from a sudden and unexpected illness or accident of the participant or of a dependent (as defined in section 152(a)) of the participant, loss of the participant's property due to casualty, or other similar extraordinary and unforeseeable circumstances arising as a result of events beyond the control of the participant. The circumstances that will constitute an unforeseeable emergency will depend upon the facts of each case, but, in any case, payment may not be made to the extent that such hardship is or may be relieved—

(i) Through reimbursement or compensation by insurance or otherwise,

(ii) By liquidation of the participant's assets, to the extent the liquidation of such assets would not itself cause severe financial hardship, or

(iii) By cessation of deferrals under the plan.

Examples of what are not considered to be unforeseeable emergencies include the need to send a participant's child to college or the desire to purchase a home.

(5) *Emergency withdrawals.* Withdrawals of amounts because of an unforeseeable emergency must only be permitted to the extent reasonably needed to satisfy the emergency need.

(i) *Distributions of deferrals*—(1) *Commencement of distributions.* A plan is not an eligible plan unless under the plan the payment of amounts deferred will commence not later than the later of—

(i) 60 days after the close of the plan year in which the participant or former participant attains (or would have attained) normal retirement age (within the meaning of § 1.457–2(f)(4)), or

(ii) 60 days after the close of the plan year in which the participant separates from service (within the meaning of §§ 1.457–2(h) (2) and (3)) with the State.

A plan is not other than an eligible plan merely because, prior to October 27, 1982, the distribution of amounts deferred under the plan may commence no later than the close of the participant's taxable year in which the participant attains age 70½.

(2) *Limitations on distributions.* Distributions must be made primarily for the benefit of participants (or former participants). Thus, the schedule selected by the participant for payments of benefits under the plan must be such that benefits payable to a beneficiary are not more than incidental. For example, if provision is made for payment of a portion of the amounts deferred to a beneficiary, the amounts payable to the participant or former participant (as determined by use of the expected return multiples in § 1.72–9, or, in the case of payments under a contract issued by an insurance company, by use of the mortality tables of such company), must exceed one-half of the maximum that could have been payable to the participant if no provision were made for payment to a beneficiary.

(3) *Distributions to beneficiaries.* A plan is not an eligible plan unless the plan provides that, if the participant dies before the entire amount deferred is paid to the participant, the entire amount deferred (or the remaining part of such deferrals if payment thereof has commenced) must be paid to a beneficiary over—

(i) The life of the beneficiary (or any shorter period), if the beneficiary is the participant's surviving spouse, or

(ii) A period not in excess of 15 years, if the beneficiary is not the participant's surviving spouse.

(j) *Administration of plan.* A plan is not an eligible plan unless all amounts deferred under the plan, all property and rights to property (including rights as a beneficiary of a contract providing life insurance protection) purchased with the amounts, and all income attributable to the amounts, property, or rights to property, remain (until paid or made available to the participant or beneficiary under the plan) solely the property and rights of the State (without being restricted to the benefits under the plan) subject to the claims of the general creditors of the State only. However, nothing in this paragraph (j) prohibits a plan's permitting participants to direct, from among different modes under the plan, the investment of the above amounts (see § 1.457–1(b)).

(k) *Plan-to-plan transfers.* The plan may provide for the transfer of amounts deferred by a former participant to another eligible plan of which the former participant has become a participant if the following conditions are met—

(1) The entities sponsoring the plans are located within the same State (as that term is used in § 1.457–2(c)(1)),

(2) The plan receiving such amounts provides for the acceptance of the amounts, and

(3) The plan provides that if the participant separates from service in order to accept employment with another such entity, payout will not commence upon separation from service, regardless of any other provision of the plan, and amounts previously deferred will automatically be transferred.

(l) *Effect on plan when not administered in accordance with paragraphs (c) through (k).* A plan that is administered in a manner which is inconsistent with one or more of the requirements of paragraphs (c) through (k) of this section ceases to be an eligible plan on the first day of the first plan year beginning more than 180 days after the date of written notification by the Internal Revenue Service that the requirements are not satisfied, unless the inconsistency is corrected before the first day of that plan year.

(m) *Examples.* The provisions of this section may be illustrated by the following examples:

Example 1. A, born on June 1, 1917, is a participant in an eligible State deferred compensation plan providing a normal retirement age of 65. The plan provides limitations on deferrals up to the maximum permitted under § 1.457–2 (e) and (f).

For 1979, A, who will be 62, is scheduled to receive a salary of $20,000 from the State. A desires to defer the maximun amount possible in 1979. The maximum amount that A may defer under the plan is the lesser of $7,500, or 33⅓% of A's includible compensation (generally the equivalent of 25 percent of gross compensation). Accordingly, the maximum that A may defer for 1979 is $5,000 [$5,000=$20,000×.25]. Although A's taxable year 1979 is one of A's last 3 taxable years before the year in which A attains normal retirement age under the plan, A is not able to utilize the catch-up provisions of § 1.457–2(f) in 1979 because only taxable years beginning after December 31, 1978, may be taken into account under those provisions.

Example 2. Assume the same facts as in example 1. In A's taxable year 1980, A receives a salary of $20,000, and elects to defer only $1,000 under the plan. In A's taxable year 1981, A again receives a salary of $20,000 and elects to defer the maximum amount permissible under the plan's catch-up provisions prescribed under § 1.457–2(f). The applicable limit on deferrals under the catch-up provision is the lesser of $15,000 or the sum of the normal plan ceiling for 1981, plus any under-utilized deferrals for any taxable year before 1981. Thus, the maximum amount that A may defer in 1981 is $9,000, the normal plan ceiling for 1981, $5,000, plus the under-utilized deferrals for 1980, $4,000.

Example 3. Assume the same facts as in examples 1 and 2. In A's taxable year 1982, the year in which A will attain age 65, normal retirement age under the plan, A desires to defer the maximum amount possible under the plan. For 1982 the normal limitations of § 1.457–2(e) are applicable, and the maximum amount that A may defer is $5,000, assuming that A's salary for 1982 was again $20,000. The plan's catch-up provisions prescribed under § 1.457–2(f) are not applicable because 1982 is not a year ending before the year in which A attains normal retirement age.

[T.D. 7836, 47 FR 42338, Sept. 27, 1982]

§ 1.457–3 Tax treatment of participants where plan is not an eligible plan.

(a) *In general.* If a State (within the meaning of § 1.457–2(c)) provides for a deferral of compensation (after the effective date described in paragraph (c)) under any agreement or arrangement described in § 1.457–2(b) that is not an eligible plan within the meaning of § 1.457–2—

(1) Compensation deferred under the agreement or arrangement shall be includible in the gross income of the participant of beneficiary for the first taxable year in which there is no substantial risk of forfeiture (within the meaning of section 457(e)(3)) of the rights to such compensation,

(2) Earnings credited on the compensation deferred under the agreement of arrangement shall be includible in the gross income of the participant or beneficiary only when paid or made available, provided that the interest of the participant or beneficiary in the assets (including amounts deferred under the plan) of the entity sponsoring the plan is not senior to the entity's general creditors, and

(3) Amounts paid or made available under the plan to a participant or beneficiary shall be taxable to the participant or beneficiary under section 72, relating to annuities.

(b) *Exceptions.* Paragraph (a) does not apply with respect to—

(1) A plan described in section 401(a) which includes a trust exempt from tax under section 501(a),

(2) An annuity plan or contract described in section 403,

(3) A qualified bond purchase plan described in section 405(a),

(4) That portion of any plan which consists of a transfer of property described in section 83, and

(5) That portion of any plan which consists of a trust to which section 402(b) applies.

(c) *Effective date.* This section is effective for taxable years beginning after December 31, 1981. For rules applicable in taxable years beginning after December 31, 1978, and before January 1, 1982, see § 1.457–4.

[T.D. 7836, 47 FR 42341, Sept. 27, 1982; 47 FR 46497, Oct. 19, 1982]

§ 1.457–4 Transitional rules.

(a) *In general.* Subject to the limitations described in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section, amounts deferred (within the meaning of § 1.457–1(d)(3)) in taxable years beginning after December 31, 1978, and before January 1, 1982 under a plan described in § 1.457–2(b) (including an eligible plan within the meaning of § 1.457–2, but not including a plan described in section 457(e)(2) and § 1.457–3(b)) shall be includible in gross income only for the taxable year in which paid or otherwise made available to the participant or other beneficiary.

(b) *General limitation.* Except as described in paragraph (c) of this section, and excluding amounts deferred in taxable years beginning before January 1, 1979, compensation deferred under one or more plans described in paragraph (a) of this section is excludable from a participant's gross income under this section for a taxable year only to the extent it does not exceed the lesser of—

(1) $7,500, or

(2) 33⅓% of the participant's includible compensation (within the meaning of § 1.457–2(e)(2)) for the taxable year, reduced by any amount excludable from the participant's gross income for the taxable year under section 403(b) on account of contributions made by the State (within the meaning of § 1.457–2(c)). For purposes of this paragraph, compensation deferred under a plan shall be taken into account at its value in the plan year in which deferred. However, if the compensation deferred is subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture (as defined in section 457(e)(3)), such compensation shall be taken into account at its value in the plan year in which such compensation is no longer subject to a substantial risk of forfeiture.

(c) *Limited catch-up.* This paragraph (c) applies if all plans described in paragraph (a) of this section in which an individual is a participant are eligible plans within the meaning of § 1.457–2, and the participant's taxable year is a taxable year described in section 457(b)(3) and § 1.457–2(f). In such a case, compensation deferred under the plans for the taxable year is excluded from gross income under paragraph (a) of this section to the extent it does not exceed the amount determined under §1.457–1(a)(2) or, as applicable, §1.457–1(a)(3).

(d) *Example.* The provisions of this section may be illustrated by the following example:

Example. A is a participant in a State deferred compensation plan that is not an eligible plan within the meaning of §1.457–2. The plan provides no limitations on the amount of compensation that may be deferred during any taxable year. For the taxable years 1979, 1980, and 1981 A has includible compensation of $40,000. In each of those years, A has deferred $10,000 of compensation. Under the transitional rules described in this section, $7,500 of A's deferrals in each year will be includible in gross income in the taxable year in which paid or made available to A or A's beneficiary. The remaining $2,500 of each year's deferrals ($10,000 − $7,500) are includible in A's gross income for the deferral year. Thus, $2,500 is includible in A's gross income for each of the taxable years 1979, 1980, and 1981. The tax treatment of amounts deferred by A in taxable years after 1981 is described in §1.457–3.

[T.D. 7836, 47 FR 42341, Sept. 27, 1982]

§ 1.458–1 Exclusion for certain returned magazines, paperbacks, or records.

(a) *In general*—(1) *Introduction.* For taxable years beginning after September 30, 1979, section 458 allows accrual basis taxpayers to elect to use a method of accounting that excludes from gross income some or all of the income attributable to qualified sales during the taxable year of magazines, paperbacks, or records, that are returned before the close of the applicable merchandise return period for that taxable year. Any amount so excluded cannot be excluded or deducted from gross income for the taxable year in which the merchandise is returned to the taxpayer. For the taxable year in which the taxpayer first uses this method of accounting, the taxpayer is not allowed to exclude from gross income amounts attributable to merchandise returns received during the taxable year that would have been excluded from gross income for the prior taxable year had the taxpayer used this method of accounting for that prior year. (See paragraph (e) of this section for rules describing how this amount should be taken into account.) The election to use this method of accounting shall be made in accordance with the rules contained in section 458(c) and in §1.458–2 and this section. A taxpayer that does not elect to use this method of accounting can reduce income for returned merchandise only for the taxable year in which the merchandise is actually returned unsold by the purchaser.

(2) *Effective date.* While this section is generally effective only for taxable years beginning after August 31, 1984, taxpayers may rely on the provisions of paragraphs (a) through (f) of this section in taxable years beginning after September 30, 1979.

(b) *Definitions*—(1) *Magazine.* ''Magazine'' means a publication, usually paper-backed and sometimes illustrated, that is issued at regular intervals and contains stories, poems, articles, features, etc. This term includes periodicals, but does not include newspapers or volumes of a single publication issued at various intervals. However, volumes of a single publication that are issued at least annually, are related by title or subject matter to a magazine, and would otherwise qualify as a magazine, will be treated as a magazine.

(2) *Paperback.* ''Paperback'' means a paperback book other than a magazine. Unlike a hardback book, which usually has stiff front and back covers that enclose pages bound to a separate spine, a paperback book is characterized by a flexible outer cover to which the pages of the book are directly affixed.

(3) *Record.* ''Record'' means a disc, tape, or similar item on which music, spoken or other sounds are recorded. However, the term does not include blank records, tapes, etc., on which it is expected the ultimate purchaser will record. The following items, provided they carry pre-recorded sound, are examples of ''records'': audio and video cassettes, eight-track tapes, reel-to-reel tapes, cylinders, and flat, compact, and laser discs.

(4) *Qualified sale.* In order for a sale to be considered a qualified sale, both of the following conditions must be met:

(i) The taxpayer must be under a legal obligation (as determined by applicable State law), at the time of sale, to adjust the sales price of the magazine, paperback, or record on account of the purchaser's failure to resell it; and

(ii) The taxpayer must actually adjust the sales price of the magazine, paperback, or record to reflect the purchaser's failure to resell the merchandise. The following are examples of adjustments to the sales price of unsold merchandise: Cash refunds, credits to the account of the purchaser, and repurchases of the merchandise. The adjustment need not be equal to the full amount of the sales price of the item. However, a markdown of the sales price under an agreement whereby the purchaser continues to hold the merchandise for sale or other disposition (other than solely for scrap) does not constitute an adjustment resulting from a failure to resell.

(5) *Merchandise return period*—(i) *In general*. Unless the taxpayer elects a shorter period, the ''merchandise return period'' is the period that ends 2 months and 15 days after the close of the taxable year for sales of magazines and 4 months and 15 days after the close of the taxable year for sales of paperbacks and records.

(ii) *Election to use shorter period*. The taxpayer may select a shorter merchandise return period than the applicable period set forth in paragraph (b)(5)(i) of this section.

(iii) *Change in merchandise return period*. Any change in the merchandise return period after its initial establishment will be treated as a change in method of accounting.

(c) *Amount of the exclusion*—(1) *In general*. Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (g) of this section, the amount of the gross income exclusion with respect to any qualified sale is equal to the lesser of—

(i) The amount covered by the legal obligation referred to in paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this section; or

(ii) The amount of the adjustment agreed to by the taxpayer before the close of the merchandise return period.

(2) *Price adjustment in excess of legal obligation*. The excess, if any, of the amount described in paragraph (c)(1)(ii) of this section over the amount described in paragraph (c)(1)(i) of this section should be excluded in the taxable year in which it is properly accruable under section 461.

(d) *Return of the merchandise*—(1) *In general*. (i) The exclusion from gross income allowed by section 458 applies with respect to a qualified sale of merchandise only if the seller receives, before the close of the merchandise return period, either—

(A) The physical return of the merchandise; or

(B) Satisfactory evidence that the merchandise has not been and will not be resold (as defined in paragraph (d)(2) of this section).

(ii) For purposes of this paragraph (d), evidence of a return received by an agent of the seller (other than the purchaser who purchased the merchandise from the seller) will be considered to be received by the seller at the time the agent receives the merchandise or evidence.

(2) *Satisfactory evidence*. Evidence that merchandise has not been and will not be resold is satisfactory only if the seller receives—

(i) Physical return of some portion of the merchandise (e.g., covers) provided under either the agreement between the seller and the purchaser or industry practice (such return evidencing the fact that the purchaser has not and will not resell the merchandise); or

(ii) A written statement from the purchaser specifying the quantities of each title not resold, provided either—

(A) The statement contains a representation that the items specified will not be resold by the purchaser; or

(B) The past dealings, if any, between the parties and industry practice indicate that such statement constitutes a promise by the purchaser not to resell the items.

(3) *Retention of evidence*. In the case of a return of merchandise (described in paragraph (d)(1)(i)(A) of this section) or portion thereof (described in paragraph (d)(2)(i) of this section), the seller has no obligation to retain physical evidence of the returned merchandise or portion thereof, provided the seller maintains documentary evidence that describes the quantity of physical

items returned to the seller and indicates that the items were returned before the close of the merchandise return period.

(e) *Transitional adjustment*—(1) *In general.* An election to change from some other method of accounting for the return of magazines, paperbacks, or records to the method of accounting described in section 458 is a change in method of accounting that requires a transitional adjustment. Section 458 provides special rules for transitional adjustments that must be taken into account as a result of this change. See paragraph (e)(2) of this section for special rules applicable to magazines and paragraphs (e) (3) and (4) of this section for special rules applicable to paperbacks and records.

(2) *Magazines: 5-year spread of decrease in taxable income.* For taxpayers who have elected to use the method of accounting described in section 458 to account for returned magazines for a taxable year, section 458(d) and this paragraph (e)(2) provide a special rule for taking into account any decrease in taxable income resulting from the adjustment required by section 481(a)(2). Under these provisions, one-fifth of the transitional adjustment must be taken into account in the taxable year of the change and in each of the 4 succeeding taxable years. For example, if the application of section 481(a)(2) would produce a decrease in taxable income of $50 for 1980, the year of change, then $10 (one-fifth of $50) must be taken into account as a decrease in taxable income for 1980, 1981, 1982, 1983, and 1984.

(3) *Suspense account for paperbacks and records*—(i) *In general.* For taxpayers who have elected to use the method of accounting described in section 458 to account for returned paperbacks and records for a taxable year, section 458(e) provides that, in lieu of applying section 481, an electing taxpayer must establish a separate suspense account for its paperback business and its record business. The initial opening balance of the suspense account is described in paragraph (e)(3)(ii)(A) of this section. An initial adjustment to gross income for the year of election is described in paragraph (e)(3)(ii)(B) of this section. Annual adjustments to the suspense account are described in paragraph (e)(3)(iii)(A) of this section. Gross income adjustments are described in paragraph (e)(3)(iii)(B) of this section. Examples are provided in paragraph (e)(4) of this section. The effect of the suspense account is to defer all, or some part, of the deduction of the transitional adjustment until the taxpayer is no longer engaged in the trade or business of selling paperbacks or records, whichever is applicable.

(ii) *Establishing a suspense account*—(A) *Initial opening balance.* To compute the initial opening balance of the suspense account for the first taxable year for which an election is effective, the taxpayer must determine the section 458 amount (as defined in paragraph (e)(3)(ii)(C) of this section) for each of the three preceding taxable years. The initial opening balance of the account is the largest of the section 458 amounts.

(B) *Initial year adjustment.* If the initial opening balance in the suspense account exceeds the section 458 amount (as defined in paragraph (e)(3)(ii)(C) of this section) for the taxable year immediately preceding the year of election, the excess is included in the taxpayer's gross income for the first taxable year for which the election was made.

(C) *Section 458 amount.* For purposes of paragraph (e)(3)(ii) of this section, the section 458 amount for a taxable year is the dollar amount of merchandise returns that would have been excluded from gross income under section 458(a) for that taxable year if the section 458 election had been in effect for that taxable year.

(iii) *Annual adjustments*—(A) *Adjustment to the suspense account.* Adjustments are made to the suspense account each year to account for fluctuations in merchandise returns. To compute the annual adjustment, the taxpayer must determine the amount to be excluded under the election from gross income under section 458(a) for the taxable year. If the amount is less than the opening balance in the suspense account for the taxable year, the balance in the suspense account is reduced by the difference. Conversely, if the amount is greater than the opening balance in the suspense account for the taxable year, the account is increased by the difference, but not to an amount in excess of the initial opening balance described in paragraph (e)(3)(ii)(A) of this section. Therefore, the balance in the suspense account will never be greater than the initial opening balance in the suspense account determined in paragraph (e)(3)(ii)(A) of this section. However, the balance in the suspense account after adjustments may be less than this initial opening balance in the suspense account.

(B) *Gross income adjustments.* Adjustments to the suspense account for years subsequent to the year of election also produce adjustments in the taxpayer's gross income. Adjustments which reduce the balance in the suspense account reduce gross income for the year in which the adjustment to the suspense account is made. Adjustments which increase the balance in the suspense account increase gross income for the year in which the adjustment to the suspense account is made.

(4) *Example.* The provisions of paragraph (e)(3) of this section may be illustrated by the following example:

Example: (i) X corporation, a paperback distributor, makes a timely section 458 election for its taxable year ending December 31, 1980. If the election had been in effect for the taxable years ending on December 31, 1977, 1978, and 1979, the dollar amounts of the qualifying returns would have been $5, $8, and $6, respectively. The initial opening balance of X's suspense account on January 1, 1980, is $8, the largest of these amounts. Since the initial opening balance ($8), is larger than the qualifying returns for 1979 ($6), the initial adjustment to gross income for 1980 is $2 ($8–$6).

(ii) X has $5 in qualifying returns for its taxable year ending December 31, 1980. X must reduce its suspense account by $3, which is the excess of the opening balance ($8) over the amount of qualifying returns for the 1980 taxable year ($5). X also reduces its gross income for 1980 by $3. Thus, the net amount excludable from gross income for the 1980 taxable year after taking into account the qualifying returns, the gross income adjustment, and the initial year adjustment is $6 ($3+$5 − $2).

(iii) X has qualifying returns of $7 for its taxable year ending December 31, 1981. X must increase its suspense account balance by $2, which is the excess of the amount of qualifying returns for 1981 ($7) over X's opening balance in the suspense account ($5). X must also increase its gross income by $2. Thus, the net income excludable from gross income for the 1981 taxable year after taking into account the qualifying returns and the gross income adjustment is $5 ($7–$2).

(iv) X has qualifying returns of $10 for its taxable year ending December 31, 1982. The opening balance in X's suspense account of $7 will not be increased in excess of the initial opening balance ($8). X must also increase gross income by $1. Thus, the net amount excludable from gross income for the 1982 taxable year is $9 ($10–$1).

(v) This example is summarized by the following table:

	Years Ending December 31					
	1977	1978	1979	1980 [1]	1981	1982
Facts:						
Qualifying returns during merchandise return period for the taxable year	$5	$8	$6	$5	$7	$10
Adjustment to suspense account:						
Opening balance				$8	$5	$7
Addition to account [2]					2	1
Reduction to account [3]				(3)		
Opening balance for next year				$5	$7	$8
Amount excludable from income:						
Initial year adjustment				$(2)		
Amount excludable as qualifying returns in merchandise return period				5	$7	$10
Adjustment for increase in suspense account					(2)	(1)
Adjustment for decrease in suspense account				3		
Net amount excludable for the year				$6	$5	$9

[1] Year of Change.

[2] Applies when qualifying returns during the merchandise return period exceed the opening balance; the addition is not to cause the suspense account to exceed the initial opening balance.
[3] Applies when qualifying returns during the merchandise return period are less than the opening balance.

(f) *Subchapter C transactions*—(1) *General rule.* If a transfer of substantially all the assets of a trade or business in which paperbacks or records are sold is made to an acquiring corporation, and if the acquiring corporation determines its basis in these assets, in whole or part, with reference to the basis of these assets in the hands of the transferor, then for the purposes of section 458(e) the principles of section 381 and §1.381(c)(4)–1 will apply. The application of this rule is not limited to the transactions described in section 381(a). Thus, the rule also applies, for example, to transactions described in section 351.

(2) *Special rules.* If, in the case of a transaction described in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, an acquiring corporation acquires assets that were used in a trade or business that was not subject to a section 458 election from a transferor that is owned or controlled directly (or indirectly through a chain of corporations) by the same interests, and if the acquiring corporation uses the acquired assets in a trade or business for which the acquiring corporation later makes an election to use section 458, then the acquiring corporation must establish a suspense account by taking into account not only its own experience but also the transferor's experience when the transferor held the assets in its trade or business. Furthermore, the transferor is not allowed a deduction or exclusion for merchandise returned after the date of the transfer attributable to sales made by the transferor before the date of the transfer. Such returns shall be considered to be received by the acquiring corporation.

(3) *Example.* The provisions of paragraph (f)(2) of this section may be illustrated by the following example.

Example. Corporation S, a calendar year taxpayer, is a wholly owned subsidiary of Corporation P, a calendar year taxpayer. On December 31, 1982, S acquires from P substantially all of the assets used in a trade or business in which records are sold. P had not made an election under section 458 with respect to the qualified sale of records made in connection with that trade or business. S makes an election to use section 458 for its taxable year ending December 31, 1983, for the trade or business in which the acquired assets are used. P's qualified record returns within the 4 month and 15 day merchandise return period following the 1980 and 1981 taxable years were $150 and $170, respectively. S's qualified record returns during the merchandise return period following 1982 were $160. S must establish a suspense account by taking into account both P's and S's experience for the 3 immediately preceding taxable years. Thus, the initial opening balance of S's suspense account is $170. S must also make an initial year adjustment of $10 ($170—$160), which S must include in income for S's taxable year ending December 31, 1983. P is not entitled to a deduction or exclusion for merchandise received after the date of the transfer (December 31, 1982) attributable to sales made by the transferor before the date of transfer. Thus, P is not entitled to a deduction or exclusion for the $160 of merchandise received by S during the first 4 months and 15 days of 1983.

(g) *Adjustment to inventory and cost of goods sold.* (1) If a taxpayer makes adjustments to gross receipts for a taxable year under the method of accounting described in section 458, the taxpayer, in determining excludable gross income, is also required to make appropriate correlative adjustments to purchases or closing inventory and to cost of goods sold for the same taxable year. Adjustments are appropriate, for example, where the taxpayer holds the merchandise returned for resale or where the taxpayer is entitled to receive a price adjustment from the person or entity that sold the merchandise to the taxpayer. Cost of goods sold must be properly adjusted in accordance with the provisions of §1.61–3 which provides, in pertinent part, that gross income derived from a manufacturing or merchandising business equals total sales less cost of goods sold.

(2) The provisions of this paragraph (g) may be illustrated by the following examples. These examples do not, however, reflect any required adjustments under paragraph (e)(3) of this section.

Example 1. (i) In 1986, P, a publisher, properly elects under section 458 of the Code not to include in its gross income in the year of sale, income attributable to qualified sales of paperback books returned within the specified statutory merchandise return period of 4 months and 15 days. P and D, a distributor, agree that P shall provide D with a full refund for paperback books that D purchases from P and is unable to resell, provided the merchandise is returned to P within four months following the original sale. The agreement constitutes a legal obligation. The agreement provides that D's return of the covers of paperback books within the first four months following their sale constitutes satisfactory evidence that D has not resold and will not resell the paperback books. During P's 1989 taxable year, pursuant to the agreement, P sells D 500 paperback books for $1 each. In 1990, during the merchandise return period, D returns covers from 100 unsold paperback books representing $100 of P's 1989 sales of paperback books. P's cost attributable to the returned books is $25. No adjustment to cost of goods sold is required under paragraph (g)(1) of this section because P is not holding returned merchandise for resale. P's proper amount excluded from its 1989 gross income under section 458 is $100.

(ii) If D returns the paperback books, rather than the covers, to P and these same books are then held by P for resale to other customers, paragraph (g)(1) of this section applies. Under paragraph (g)(1), P is required to decrease its cost of goods sold by $25, the amount of P's cost attributable to the returned merchandise. The proper amount excluded from P's 1989 gross income under section 458 is $75, resulting from adjustments to sales and cost of sales [(100×$1)—$25].

Example 2. (i) In 1986, D, a distributor, properly elects under section 458 of the Code not to include in its gross income in the year of sale, income attributable to qualified sales of paperback books returned within the specified statutory merchandise return period of four months and 15 days. D and R, a retailer, agree that D shall provide a full refund for paperback books that R purchases from it and is unable to resell. D and R also have agreed that the merchandise must be returned to D within four months following the original sale. The agreement constitutes a legal obligation. D is similarly entitled to a full refund from P, the publisher, for the same paperback books. In 1990, during the merchandise return period, R returns paperback books to D representing $100 of 1989 sales. D's cost relating to these sales is $50. Under paragraph (g)(1) of this section, D must decrease its costs of goods sold by $50. D's proper amount excluded from its 1989 gross income under section 458 is $50 resulting from adjustments to sales and costs of sales ($100—$50).

(ii) If D is instead only entitled to a 50 percent refund from P, D is required under paragraph (g)(1) of this section to decrease its costs of goods sold by $25, the amount of refund from P. D's proper amount excluded from its 1989 gross income under section 458 is $75, resulting from adjustments to sales and cost of sales ($100—$25).

[T.D. 8426, 57 FR 38596, Aug. 26, 1992; 57 FR 45879, Oct. 5, 1992]

§ 1.458–2 Manner of and time for making election.

(a) *Scope.* For taxable years beginning after September 30, 1979, section 458 provides a special method of accounting for taxpayers who account for sales of magazines, paperbacks, or records using an accrual method of accounting. In order to use the special method of accounting under section 458, a taxpayer must make an election in the manner prescribed in this section. The election does not require the prior consent of the Internal Revenue Service. The election is effective for the taxable year for which it is made and for all subsequent taxable years, unless the taxpayer secures the prior consent of the Internal Revenue Service to revoke such election.

(b) *Separate election for each trade or business.* An election is made with respect to each trade or business of a taxpayer in connection with which qualified sales (as defined in section 458(b)(5)) of a category of merchandise were made. Magazines, paperbacks, and records are each treated as a separate category of merchandise. If qualified sales of two or more categories of merchandise are made in connection with the same trade or business, then solely for purposes of section 458, each category is treated as a separate trade or business. For example, if a taxpayer makes qualified sales of both magazines and paperbacks in the same trade or business, then solely for purposes of section 458, the qualified sales relating to magazines are considered one trade or business and the qualified sales relating to paperbacks are considered a separate trade or business. Thus, if the taxpayer wishes to account under section 458 for the qualified sales of both magazines and paperbacks, such taxpayer must make a separate election for each category.

(c) *Manner of, and time for, making election.* An election is made under section 458 and this section by filing a statement of election containing the information described in paragraph (d) of this section with the taxpayer's income tax return for first taxable year for which the election is made. The election must be made no later than the time prescribed by law (including extensions) for filing the income tax return for the first taxable year for which the election is made. Thus, the election may not be filed with an amended income tax return after the prescribed date (including extensions) for filing the original return for such year.

(d) *Required information.* The statement of election required by paragraph (c) of this section must indicate that an election is being made under section 458(c) and must set forth the following information:

(1) The taxpayer's name, address, and identification number;

(2) A description of each trade or business for which an election is made;

(3) The first taxable year for which an election is made for each trade or business;

(4) The merchandise return period (as defined in section 458(b)(7)) for each trade or business for which an election is made;

(5) With respect to an election that applies to magazines, the amount of the adjustment computed under section 481(a) resulting from the change to the method of accounting described in section 458; and

(6) With respect to an election that applies to paperbacks or records, the initial opening balance (computed in accordance with section 458(e)) in the suspense account for each trade or business for which an election is made.

The statement of election should be made on a Form 3115 which need contain no information other than that required by this paragraph.

[T.D. 7628, 44 FR 33398, June 11, 1979. Redesignated by T.D. 8426, 57 FR 38599, Aug. 26, 1992]

§ 1.460–0 Outline of regulations under section 460.

This section lists the paragraphs contained in § 1.460–1 through § 1.460–6.

§ 1.460–1 Long-term contracts.

(a) Overview.
(1) In general.
(2) Exceptions to required use of PCM.
(i) Exempt construction contract.
(ii) Qualified ship or residential construction contract.
(b) Terms.
(1) Long-term contract.
(2) Contract for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of property.
(i) In general.
(ii) De minimis construction activities.
(3) Allocable contract costs.
(4) Related party.
(5) Contracting year.
(6) Completion year.
(7) Contract commencement date.
(8) Incurred.
(9) Independent research and development expenses.
(10) Long-term contract methods of accounting.
(c) Entering into and completing long-term contracts.
(1) In general.
(2) Date contract entered into.
(i) In general.
(ii) Options and change orders.
(3) Date contract completed.
(i) In general.
(ii) Secondary items.
(iii) Subcontracts.
(iv) Final completion and acceptance.
(A) In general.
(B) Contingent compensation.
(C) Assembly or installation.
(D) Disputes.
(d) Allocation among activities.
(1) In general.
(2) Non-long-term contract activity.
(e) Severing and aggregating contracts.
(1) In general.
(2) Facts and circumstances.
(i) Pricing.
(ii) Separate delivery or acceptance.
(iii) Reasonable businessperson.
(3) Exceptions.
(i) Severance for PCM.
(ii) Options and change orders.
(4) Statement with return.
(f) Classifying contracts.
(1) In general.
(2) Hybrid contracts.
(i) In general.
(ii) Elections.
(3) Method of accounting.
(4) Use of estimates.
(i) Estimating length of contract.
(ii) Estimating allocable contract costs.

(g) Special rules for activities benefitting long-term contracts of a related party.
(1) Related party use of PCM.
(i) In general.
(ii) Exception for components and subassemblies.
(2) Total contract price.
(3) Completion factor.
(h) Effective date.
(1) In general.
(2) Change in method of accounting.
(i) [Reserved]
(j) Examples.

§ 1.460–2 Long-term manufacturing contracts.

(a) In general.
(b) Unique.
(1) In general.
(2) Safe harbors.
(i) Short production period.
(ii) Customized item.
(iii) Inventoried item.
(c) Normal time to complete.
(1) In general.
(2) Production by related parties.
(d) Qualified ship contracts.
(e) Examples.

§ 1.460–3 Long-term construction contracts.

(a) In general.
(b) Exempt construction contracts.
(1) In general.
(2) Home construction contract.
(i) In general.
(ii) Townhouses and rowhouses.
(iii) Common improvements.
(iv) Mixed use costs.
(3) $10,000,000 gross receipts test.
(i) In general.
(ii) Single employer.
(iii) Attribution of gross receipts.
(c) Residential construction contracts.

§ 1.460–4 Methods of accounting for long-term contracts.

(a) Overview.
(b) Percentage-of-completion method.
(1) In general.
(2) Computations.
(3) Post-completion-year income.
(4) Total contract price.
(i) In general.
(A) Definition.
(B) Contingent compensation.
(C) Non-long-term contract activities.
(ii) Estimating total contract price.
(5) Completion factor.
(i) Allocable contract costs.
(ii) Cumulative allocable contract costs.
(iii) Estimating total allocable contract costs.
(iv) Pre-contracting-year costs.
(v) Post-completion-year costs.
(6) 10-percent method.
(i) In general.
(ii) Election.
(7) Terminated contract.
(i) Reversal of income.
(ii) Adjusted basis.
(iii) Look-back method.
(c) Exempt contract methods.
(1) In general.
(2) Exempt-contract percentage-of-completion method.
(i) In general.
(ii) Determination of work performed.
(d) Completed-contract method.
(1) In general.
(2) Post-completion-year income and costs.
(3) Gross contract price.
(4) Contracts with disputed claims.
(i) In general.
(ii) Taxpayer assured of profit or loss.
(iii) Taxpayer unable to determine profit or loss.
(iv) Dispute resolved.
(e) Percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method.
(f) Alternative minimum taxable income.
(1) In general.
(2) Election to use regular completion factors.
(g) Method of accounting.
(h) Examples.
(i) [Reserved]
(j) Consolidated groups and controlled groups.
(1) Intercompany transactions.
(i) In general.
(ii) Definitions and nomenclature.
(2) Example.
(3) Effective dates.
(i) In general.
(ii) Prior law.
(4) Consent to change method of accounting.
(k) Mid-contract change in taxpayer.
(1) In general.
(2) Constructive completion transactions.
(i) Scope.

(ii) Old taxpayer.
(iii) New taxpayer.
(iv) Special rules relating to distributions of certain contracts by a partnership. [Reserved]
(3) Step-in-the-shoes transactions.
(i) Scope.
(ii) Old taxpayer.
(A) In general.
(B) Gain realized on the transaction.
(iii) New taxpayer.
(A) Method of accounting.
(B) Contract price.
(C) Contract costs.
(iv) Special rules related to certain corporate transactions.
(A) Old taxpayer—basis adjustment.
(*1*) In general.
(*2*) Basis adjustment in excess of stock basis.
(*3*) Subsequent dispositions of certain contracts.
(B) New taxpayer.
(*1*) Contract price adjustment.
(*2*) Basis in contract.
(v) Special rules related to certain partnership transactions. [Reserved]
(4) Anti-abuse rule.
(5) Examples.
(6) Effective date.

§ 1.460–5 COST ALLOCATION RULES.

(a) Overview.
(b) Cost allocation method for contracts subject to PCM.
(1) In general.
(2) Special rules.
(i) Direct material costs.
(ii) Components and subassemblies.
(iii) Simplified production methods.
(iv) Costs identified under cost-plus long-term contracts and federal long-term contracts.
(v) Interest.
(A) In general.
(B) Production period.
(C) Application of section 263A(f).
(vi) Research and experimental expenses.
(vii) Service costs.
(A) Simplified service cost method.
(*1*) In general.
(*2*) Example.
(B) Jobsite costs.
(C) Limitation on other reasonable cost allocation methods.
(c) Simplified cost-to-cost method for contracts subject to the PCM.
(1) In general.
(2) Election.
(d) Cost allocation rules for exempt construction contracts reported using CCM.
(1) In general.
(2) Indirect costs.
(i) Indirect costs allocable to exempt construction contracts.
(ii) Indirect costs not allocable to exempt construction contracts.
(3) Large homebuilders.
(e) Cost allocation rules for contracts subject to the PCCM.
(f) Special rules applicable to costs allocated under this section.
(1) Nondeductible costs.
(2) Costs incurred for non-long-term contract activities.
(g) Method of accounting.

§ 1.460–6 Look-back method.

(a) In general.
(1) Introduction.
(2) Overview.
(b) Scope of look-back method.
(1) In general.
(2) Exceptions from section 460.
(3) De minimis exception.
(4) Alternative minimum tax.
(5) Effective date.
(c) Operation of the look-back method.
(1) Overview.
(i) In general.
(ii) Post-completion revenue and expenses.
(A) In general.
(B) Completion.
(C) Discounting of contract price and contract cost adjustments subsequent to completion; election not to discount.
(*1*) General rule.
(*2*) Election not to discount.
(*3*) Year-end discounting convention.
(D) Revenue acceleration rule.
(2) Look-back Step One.
(i) Hypothetical reallocation of income among prior tax years.
(ii) Treatment of estimated future costs in year of completion.
(iii) Interim reestimates not considered.
(iv) Tax years in which income is affected.
(v) Costs incurred prior to contract execution; 10-percent method.
(A) General rule.
(B) Example.
(vi) Amount treated as contract price.

[T.D. 9315, 55 FR 41670, Oct. 15, 1990, as amended by T.D. 8597, 60 FR 36683, July 18, 1995; T.D. 8756, 63 FR 1918, Jan. 13, 1998; T.D. 8775, 63 FR 36181, July 2, 1998; T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2224, Jan. 11, 2001; T.D. 8995, 67 FR 34605, May 15, 2002]

§ 1.460–1 Long-term contracts.

(a) *Overview*—(1) *In general.* This section provides rules for determining whether a contract for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of property is a long-term contract under section 460 and what activities must be accounted for as a single long-term contract. Specific rules for long-term manufacturing and construction contracts are provided in §§ 1.460–2 and 1.460–3, respectively. A taxpayer generally must determine the income from a long-term contract using the percentage-of-completion method described in § 1.460–4(b) (PCM) and the cost allocation rules described in § 1.460–5(b) or (c). In addition, after a contract subject to the PCM is completed, a taxpayer generally must apply the look-back method described in §1.460-6 to determine the amount of interest owed on any hypothetical underpayment of tax, or earned on any hypothetical overpayment of tax, attributable to accounting for the long-term contract under the PCM.

(2) *Exceptions to required use of PCM*—(i) *Exempt construction contract.* The requirement to use the PCM does not apply to any exempt construction contract described in §1.460–3(b). Thus, a taxpayer may determine the income from an exempt construction contract using any accounting method permitted by §1.460–4(c) and, for contracts accounted for using the completed-contract method (CCM), any cost allocation method permitted by §1.460–5(d). Exempt construction contracts that are not subject to the PCM or CCM are not subject to the cost allocation rules of §1.460–5 except for the production-period interest rules of §1.460–5(b)(2)(v). Exempt construction contractors that are large homebuilders described in §1.460–5(d)(3) must capitalize costs under section 263A. All other exempt construction contractors must account for the cost of construction using the appropriate rules contained in other sections of the Internal Revenue Code or regulations.

(ii) *Qualified ship or residential construction contract.* The requirement to use the PCM applies only to a portion of a *qualified ship contract* described in §1.460–2(d) or *residential construction contract* described in §1.460–3(c). A taxpayer generally may determine the income from a qualified ship contract or residential construction contract using the percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method (PCCM) described in §1.460–4(e), but must use a cost allocation method described in §1.460–5(b) for the entire contract.

(b) *Terms*—(1) *Long-term contract. A long-term contract* generally is any contract for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of property if the contract is not completed within the contracting year, as defined in paragraph (b)(5) of this section. However, a contract for the manufacture of property is a long-term contract only if it also satisfies either the unique item or 12-month requirements described in §1.460–2. A contract for the manufacture of personal property is a *manufacturing contract.* In contrast, a contract for the building, installation, or construction of real property is a *construction contract.*

(2) *Contract for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of property*—(i) *In general.* A contract is a *contract for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of property* if the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of property is necessary for the taxpayer's contractual obligations to be fulfilled and if the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of that property has not been completed when the parties enter into the contract. If a taxpayer has to manufacture or construct an item to fulfill its obligations under the contract, the fact that the taxpayer is not required to deliver that item to the customer is not relevant. Whether the customer has title to, control over, or bears the risk of loss from, the property manufactured or constructed by the taxpayer also is not relevant. Furthermore, how the parties characterize their agreement (*e.g.*, as a contract for the sale of property) is not relevant.

(ii) *De minimis construction activities.* Notwithstanding paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, a contract is not a construction contract under section 460 if the contract includes the provision of land by the taxpayer and the estimated total allocable contract costs, as defined in paragraph (b)(3) of this section, attributable to the taxpayer's construction activities are less than 10 percent of the contract's total contract price, as defined in §1.460–4(b)(4)(i). For the purposes of this paragraph (b)(2)(ii), the allocable contract costs attributable to the taxpayer's construction activities do not include the cost of the land provided to the customer. In addition, a contract's estimated total allocable contract costs include a proportionate share of the estimated cost of any common improvement that benefits the subject matter of the contract if the taxpayer is contractually obligated, or required by law, to construct the common improvement.

(3) *Allocable contract costs. Allocable contract costs* are costs that are allocable to a long-term contract under §1.460–5.

(4) *Related party.* A *related party* is a person whose relationship to a taxpayer is described in section 707(b) or 267(b), determined without regard to section 267(f)(1)(A) and determined by replacing ''at least 80 percent'' with ''more than 50 percent'' for the purposes of determining the ownership of the stock of a corporation in sections 267(b)(2), (8), (10)(A), and (12).

(5) *Contracting year.* The *contracting year* is the taxable year in which a taxpayer enters into a contract as described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section.

(6) *Completion year.* The *completion year* is the taxable year in which a taxpayer completes a contract as described in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.

(7) *Contract commencement date.* The *contract commencement date* is the date that a taxpayer or related party first incurs any allocable contract costs, such as design and engineering costs, other than expenses attributable to bidding and negotiating activities. Generally, the contract commencement date is relevant in applying §1.460–6(b)(3) (concerning the de minimis exception to the look-back method under section 460(b)(3)(B)); §1.460–5(b)(2)(v)(B)(1)(*i*) (concerning the production period subject to interest allocation); §1.460–2(d) (concerning qualified ship contracts); and §1.460–3(b)(1)(ii) (concerning the construction period for exempt construction contracts).

(8) *Incurred. Incurred* has the meaning given in §1.461–1(a)(2) (concerning the taxable year a liability is incurred under the accrual method of accounting), regardless of a taxpayer's overall method of accounting. See §1.461–4(d)(2)(ii) for economic performance rules concerning the PCM.

(9) *Independent research and development expenses. Independent research and development expenses* are any expenses incurred in the performance of research or development, except that this term does not include any expenses that are directly attributable to a particular long-term contract in existence when the expenses are incurred and this term does not include any expenses under an agreement to perform research or development.

(10) *Long-term contract methods of accounting. Long-term contract methods of accounting*, which include the PCM, the CCM, the PCCM, and the exempt-contract percentage-of-completion method (EPCM), are methods of accounting that may be used only for long-term contracts.

(c) *Entering into and completing long-term contracts*—(1) *In general.* To determine when a contract is entered into under paragraph (c)(2) of this section and completed under paragraph (c)(3) of this section, a taxpayer must consider all relevant allocable contract costs incurred and activities performed by itself, by related parties on its behalf, and by the customer, that are incident to or necessary for the long-term contract. In addition, to determine whether a contract is completed in the contracting year, the taxpayer may not consider when it expects to complete the contract.

(2) *Date contract entered into*—(i) *In general.* A taxpayer enters into a contract on the date that the contract binds both the taxpayer and the customer under applicable law, even if the contract is subject to unsatisfied conditions not within the taxpayer's control (such as obtaining financing). If a taxpayer delays entering into a contract for a principal purpose of avoiding section 460, however, the taxpayer will be treated as having entered into a contract not later than the contract commencement date.

(ii) *Options and change orders.* A taxpayer enters into a new contract on the date that the customer exercises an option or similar provision in a contract if that option or similar provision must be severed from the contract under paragraph (e) of this section. Similarly, a taxpayer enters into a new contract on the date that it accepts a change order or other similar agreement if the change order or other similar agreement must be severed from the contract under paragraph (e) of this section.

(3) *Date contract completed*—(i) *In general.* A taxpayer's contract is completed upon the earlier of—

(A) Use of the subject matter of the contract by the customer for its intended purpose (other than for testing) and at least 95 percent of the total allocable contract costs attributable to the subject matter have been incurred by the taxpayer; or

(B) Final completion and acceptance of the subject matter of the contract.

(ii) *Secondary items.* The date a contract accounted for using the CCM is completed is determined without regard to whether one or more secondary items have been used or finally completed and accepted. If any secondary items are incomplete at the end of the taxable year in which the primary subject matter of a contract is completed, the taxpayer must separate the portion of the gross contract price and the allocable contract costs attributable to the incomplete secondary item(s) from the completed contract and account for them using a permissible method of accounting. A permissible method of accounting includes a long-term contract method of accounting only if a separate contract for the secondary item(s) would be a long-term contract, as defined in paragraph (b)(1) of this section.

(iii) *Subcontracts.* In the case of a subcontract, a subcontractor's customer is the general contractor. Thus, the subject matter of the subcontract is the relevant subject matter under paragraph (c)(3)(i) of this section.

(iv) *Final completion and acceptance*—(A) *In general.* Except as otherwise provided in this paragraph (c)(3)(iv), to determine whether final completion and acceptance of the subject matter of a contract have occurred, a taxpayer must consider all relevant facts and circumstances. Nevertheless, a taxpayer may not delay the completion of a contract for the principal purpose of deferring federal income tax.

(B) *Contingent compensation.* Final completion and acceptance is determined without regard to any contractual term that provides for additional compensation that is contingent on the successful performance of the subject matter of the contract. A taxpayer must account for all contingent compensation that is not includible in total contract price under §1.460–4(b)(4)(i), or in gross contract price under §1.460–4(d)(3), using a permissible method of accounting. For application of the look-back method for contracts accounted for using the PCM, see §1.460–6(c)(1)(ii) and (2)(vi).

(C) *Assembly or installation.* Final completion and acceptance is determined without regard to whether the taxpayer has an obligation to assist or supervise assembly or installation of the subject matter of the contract where the assembly or installation is not performed by the taxpayer or a related party. A taxpayer must account for the gross receipts and costs attributable to such an obligation using a permissible method of accounting, other than a long-term contract method.

(D) *Disputes.* Final completion and acceptance is determined without regard to whether a dispute exists at the time the taxpayer tenders the subject matter of the contract to the customer. For contracts accounted for using the CCM, see §1.460–4(d)(4). For application of the look-back method for contracts accounted for using the PCM, see §1.460–6(c)(1)(ii) and (2)(vi).

(d) *Allocation among activities*—(1) *In general.* Long-term contract methods of accounting apply only to the gross receipts and costs attributable to long-term contract activities. Gross receipts and costs attributable to long-term contract activities means amounts included in total contract price or gross contract price, whichever is applicable, as determined under §1.460–4, and costs allocable to the contract, as determined under §1.460–5. Gross receipts and costs attributable to non-long-term contract activities (as defined in paragraph (d)(2) of this section) generally must be taken into account using a permissible method of accounting other than a long-term contract method. See section 446(c) and §1.446–1(c). However, if the performance of a non-long-term contract activity is incident to or necessary for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of the subject matter of one or more of the taxpayer's long-term contracts, the gross receipts and costs attributable to that activity must be allocated to the long-term contract(s) benefitted as provided in §§1.460–4(b)(4)(i) and 1.460–5(f)(2), respectively.

Similarly, if a single long-term contract requires a taxpayer to perform a non-long-term contract activity that is not incident to or necessary for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of the subject matter of the long-term contract, the gross receipts and costs attributable to that non-long-term contract activity must be separated from the contract and accounted for using a permissible method of accounting other than a long-term contract method. But see paragraph (g) of this section for related party rules.

(2) *Non-long-term contract activity*. *Non-long-term contract activity* means the performance of an activity other than manufacturing, building, installation, or construction, such as the provision of architectural, design, engineering, and construction management services, and the development or implementation of computer software. In addition, performance under a guaranty, warranty, or maintenance agreement is a non-long-term contract activity that is never incident to or necessary for the manufacture or construction of property under a long-term contract.

(e) *Severing and aggregating contracts*—(1) *In general*. After application of the allocation rules of paragraph (d) of this section, the severing and aggregating rules of this paragraph (e) may be applied by the Commissioner or the taxpayer as necessary to clearly reflect income (*e.g.*, to prevent the unreasonable deferral (or acceleration) of income or the premature recognition (or deferral) of loss). Under the severing and aggregating rules, one agreement may be treated as two or more contracts, and two or more agreements may be treated as one contract. Except as provided in paragraph (e)(3)(ii) of this section, a taxpayer must determine whether to sever an agreement or to aggregate two or more agreements based on the facts and circumstances known at the end of the contracting year.

(2) *Facts and circumstances*. Whether an agreement should be severed, or two or more agreements should be aggregated, depends on the following factors:

(i) *Pricing*. Independent pricing of items in an agreement is necessary for the agreement to be severed into two or more contracts. In the case of an agreement for similar items, if the price to be paid for the items is determined under different terms or formulas (e.g., if some items are priced under a cost-plus incentive fee arrangement and later items are to be priced under a fixed-price arrangement), then the difference in the pricing terms or formulas indicates that the items are independently priced. Similarly, interdependent pricing of items in separate agreements is necessary for two or more agreements to be aggregated into one contract. A single price negotiation for similar items ordered under one or more agreements indicates that the items are interdependently priced.

(ii) *Separate delivery or acceptance*. An agreement may not be severed into two or more contracts unless it provides for separate delivery or separate acceptance of items that are the subject matter of the agreement. However, the separate delivery or separate acceptance of items by itself does not necessarily require an agreement to be severed.

(iii) *Reasonable businessperson*. Two or more agreements to perform manufacturing or construction activities may not be aggregated into one contract unless a reasonable businessperson would not have entered into one of the agreements for the terms agreed upon without also entering into the other agreement(s). Similarly, an agreement to perform manufacturing or construction activities may not be severed into two or more contracts if a reasonable businessperson would not have entered into separate agreements containing terms allocable to each severed contract. Analyzing the reasonable businessperson standard requires an analysis of all the facts and circumstances of the business arrangement between the taxpayer and the customer. For purposes of this paragraph (e)(2)(iii), a taxpayer's expectation that the parties would enter into another agreement, when agreeing to the terms contained in the first agreement, is not relevant.

(3) *Exceptions*—(i) *Severance for PCM*. A taxpayer may not sever under this paragraph (e) a long-term contract that would be subject to the PCM without obtaining the Commissioner's prior written consent.

(ii) *Options and change orders.* Except as provided in paragraph (e)(3)(i) of this section, a taxpayer must sever an agreement that increases the number of units to be supplied to the customer, such as through the exercise of an option or the acceptance of a change order, if the agreement provides for separate delivery or separate acceptance of the additional units.

(4) *Statement with return.* If a taxpayer severs an agreement or aggregates two or more agreements under this paragraph (e) during the taxable year, the taxpayer must attach a statement to its original federal income tax return for that year. This statement must contain the following information—

(i) The legend NOTIFICATION OF SEVERANCE OR AGGREGATION UNDER SEC. 1.460–1(e);

(ii) The taxpayer's name; and

(iii) The taxpayer's employer identification number or social security number.

(f) *Classifying contracts*—(1) *In general.* After applying the severing and aggregating rules of paragraph (e) of this section, a taxpayer must determine the classification of a contract (*e.g.*, as a long-term manufacturing contract, long-term construction contract, non-long-term contract) based on all the facts and circumstances known no later than the end of the contracting year. Classification is determined on a contract-by-contract basis. Consequently, a requirement to manufacture a single unique item under a long-term contract will subject all other items in that contract to section 460.

(2) *Hybrid contracts*—(i) *In general.* A long-term contract that requires a taxpayer to perform both manufacturing and construction activities (hybrid contract) generally must be classified as two contracts, a manufacturing contract and a construction contract. A taxpayer may elect, on a contract-by-contract basis, to classify a hybrid contract as a long-term construction contract if at least 95 percent of the estimated total allocable contract costs are reasonably allocable to construction activities. In addition, a taxpayer may elect, on a contract-by-contract basis, to classify a hybrid contract as a long-term manufacturing contract subject to the PCM.

(ii) *Elections.* A taxpayer makes an election under this paragraph (f)(2) by using its method of accounting for similar construction contracts or for manufacturing contracts, whichever is applicable, to account for a hybrid contract entered into during the taxable year of the election on its original federal income tax return for the election year. If an electing taxpayer's method is the PCM, the taxpayer also must use the PCM to apply the look-back method under §1.460–6 and to determine alternative minimum taxable income under §1.460–4(f).

(3) *Method of accounting.* Except as provided in paragraph (f)(2)(ii) of this section, a taxpayer's method of classifying contracts is a method of accounting under section 446 and, thus, may not be changed without the Commissioner's consent. If a taxpayer's method of classifying contracts is unreasonable, that classification method is an impermissible accounting method.

(4) *Use of estimates*—(i) *Estimating length of contract.* A taxpayer must use a reasonable estimate of the time required to complete a contract when necessary to classify the contract (e.g., to determine whether the five-year completion rule for qualified ship contracts under §1.460–2(d), or the two-year completion rule for exempt construction contracts under §1.460–3(b), is satisfied, but not to determine whether a contract is completed within the contracting year under paragraph (b)(1) of this section). To be considered reasonable, an estimate of the time required to complete the contract must include anticipated time for delay, rework, change orders, technology or design problems, or other problems that reasonably can be anticipated considering the nature of the contract and prior experience. A contract term that specifies an expected completion or delivery date may be considered evidence that the taxpayer reasonably expects to complete or deliver the subject matter of the contract on or about the date specified, especially if the contract provides bona fide penalties for failing to meet the specified date. If a taxpayer classifies a contract based on a

reasonable estimate of completion time, the contract will not be reclassified based on the actual (or another reasonable estimate of) completion time. A taxpayer's estimate of completion time will not be considered unreasonable if a contract is not completed within the estimated time primarily because of unforeseeable factors not within the taxpayer's control, such as third-party litigation, extreme weather conditions, strikes, or delays in securing permits or licenses.

(ii) *Estimating allocable contract costs.* A taxpayer must use a reasonable estimate of total allocable contract costs when necessary to classify the contract (e.g., to determine whether a contract is a home construction contract under §1.460–(3)(b)(2)). If a taxpayer classifies a contract based on a reasonable estimate of total allocable contract costs, the contract will not be reclassified based on the actual (or another reasonable estimate of) total allocable contract costs.

(g) *Special rules for activities benefitting long-term contracts of a related party*—(1) *Related party use of PCM*—(i) *In general.* Except as provided in paragraph (g)(1)(ii) of this section, if a related party and its customer enter into a long-term contract subject to the PCM, and a taxpayer performs any activity that is incident to or necessary for the related party's long-term contract, the taxpayer must account for the gross receipts and costs attributable to this activity using the PCM, even if this activity is not otherwise subject to section 460(a). This type of activity may include, for example, the performance of engineering and design services, and the production of components and subassemblies that are reasonably expected to be used in the production of the subject matter of the related party's contract.

(ii) *Exception for components and subassemblies.* A taxpayer is not required to use the PCM under this paragraph (g) to account for a component or subassembly that benefits a related party's long-term contract if more than 50 percent of the average annual gross receipts attributable to the sale of this item for the 3-taxable-year-period ending with the contracting year comes from unrelated parties.

(2) *Total contract price.* If a taxpayer is required to use the PCM under paragraph (g)(1)(i) of this section, the total contract price (as defined in §1.460–4(b)(4)(i)) is the fair market value of the taxpayer's activity that is incident to or necessary for the performance of the related party's long-term contract. The related party also must use the fair market value of the taxpayer's activity as the cost it incurs for the activity. The fair market value of the taxpayer's activity may or may not be the same as the amount the related party pays the taxpayer for that activity.

(3) *Completion factor.* To compute a contract's completion factor (as described in §1.460–4(b)(5)), the related party must take into account the fair market value of the taxpayer's activity that is incident to or necessary for the performance of the related party's long-term contract when the related party incurs the liability to the taxpayer for the activity, rather than when the taxpayer incurs the costs to perform the activity.

(h) *Effective date*—(1) *In general.* Except as otherwise provided, this section and §§1.460–2 through 1.460–5 are applicable for contracts entered into on or after January 11, 2001.

(2) *Change in method of accounting.* Any change in a taxpayer's method of accounting necessary to comply with this section and §§1.460–2 through 1.460–5 is a change in method of accounting to which the provisions of section 446 and the regulations thereunder apply. For the first taxable year that includes January 11, 2001, a taxpayer is granted the consent of the Commissioner to change its method of accounting to comply with the provisions of this section and §§1.460–2 through 1.460–5 for long-term contracts entered into on or after January 11, 2001. A taxpayer that wants to change its method of accounting under this paragraph (h)(2) must follow the automatic consent procedures in Rev. Proc. 99–49 (1999–52 I.R.B. 725) (see §601.601(d)(2) of this chapter), except that the scope limitations in section 4.02 of Rev. Proc. 99–49 do not apply. Because a change under this paragraph (h)(2) is made on a cut-off basis, a section 481(a) adjustment is not permitted or required. Moreover, the

taxpayer does not receive audit protection under section 7 of Rev. Proc. 99–49 for a change in method of accounting under this paragraph (h)(2). A taxpayer that wants to change its exempt-contract method of accounting is not granted the consent of the Commissioner under this paragraph (h)(2) and must file a Form 3115, ''Application for Change in Accounting Method,'' to obtain consent. See Rev. Proc. 97–27 (1997–1 C.B. 680) (see §601.601(d)(2) of this chapter).

(i) [Reserved]

(j) *Examples.* The following examples illustrate the rules of this section:

Example 1. Contract for manufacture of property. B notifies C, an aircraft manufacturer, that it wants to purchase an aircraft of a particular type. At the time C receives the order, C has on hand several partially completed aircraft of this type; however, C does not have any completed aircraft of this type on hand. C and B agree that B will purchase one of these aircraft after it has been completed. C retains title to and risk of loss with respect to the aircraft until the sale takes place. The agreement between C and B is a contract for the manufacture of property under paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, even if labeled as a contract for the sale of property, because the manufacture of the aircraft is necessary for C's obligations under the agreement to be fulfilled and the manufacturing was not complete when B and C entered into the agreement.

Example 2. De minimis construction activity. C, a master developer whose taxable year ends December 31, owns 5,000 acres of undeveloped land with a cost basis of $5,000,000 and a fair market value of $50,000,000. To obtain permission from the local county government to improve this land, a service road must be constructed on this land to benefit all 5,000 acres. In 2001, C enters into a contract to sell a 1,000-acre parcel of undeveloped land to B, a residential developer, for its fair market value, $10,000,000. In this contract, C agrees to construct a service road running through the land that C is selling to B and through the 4,000 adjacent acres of undeveloped land that C has sold or will sell to other residential developers for its fair market value, $40,000,000. C reasonably estimates that it will incur allocable contract costs of $50,000 (excluding the cost of the land) to construct this service road, which will be owned and maintained by the county. C must reasonably allocate the cost of the service road among the benefitted parcels. The portion of the estimated total allocable contract costs that C allocates to the 1,000-acre parcel being sold to B (based upon its fair market value) is $10,000 ($50,000×($10,000,000÷$50,000,000)). Construction of the service road is finished in 2002. Because the estimated total allocable contract costs attributable to C's construction activities, $10,000, are less than 10 percent of the contract's total contract price, $10,000,000, C's contract with B is not a construction contract under paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section. Thus, C's contract with B is not a long-term contract under paragraph (b)(2)(i) of this section, notwithstanding that construction of the service road is not completed in 2001.

Example 3. Completion—customer use. In 2002, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, enters into a contract to construct a building for B. In November of 2003, the building is completed in every respect necessary for its intended use, and B occupies the building. In early December of 2003, B notifies C of some minor deficiencies that need to be corrected, and C agrees to correct them in January 2004. C reasonably estimates that the cost of correcting these deficiencies will be less than five percent of the total allocable contract costs. C's contract is complete under paragraph (c)(3)(i)(A) of this section in 2003 because in that year, B used the building and C had incurred at least 95 percent of the total allocable contract costs attributable to the building. C must use a permissible method of accounting for any deficiency-related costs incurred after 2003.

Example 4. Completion—customer use. In 2001, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, agrees to construct a shopping center, which includes an adjoining parking lot, for B. By October 2002, C has finished constructing the retail portion of the shopping center. By December 2002, C has graded the entire parking lot, but has paved only one-fourth of it because inclement weather conditions prevented C from laying asphalt on the remaining three-fourths. In December 2002, B opens the retail portion of the shopping center and the paved portion of the parking lot to the general public. C reasonably estimates that the cost of paving the remaining three-fourths of the parking lot when weather permits will exceed five percent of C's total allocable contract costs. Even though B is using the subject matter of the contract, C's contract is not completed in December 2002 under paragraph (c)(3)(i)(A) of this section because C has not incurred at least 95 percent of the total allocable contract costs attributable to the subject matter.

Example 5. Completion—customer use. In 2001, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, agrees to manufacture 100 machines for B. By December 31, 2002, C has delivered 99 of the machines to B. C reasonably estimates that the cost of finishing the related work on the contract will be less than five percent of the total allocable contract costs. C's contract is not complete under paragraph (c)(3)(i)(A) of this section in 2002 because in that year, B is not using the subject matter of the contract (all 100 machines) for its intended purpose.

Example 6. Non-long-term contract activity. On January 1, 2001, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, enters into a single long-term contract to design and manufacture a satellite and to develop computer software enabling B to operate the satellite. At the end of 2001, C has not finished manufacturing the satellite. Designing the satellite and developing the computer software are non-long-term contract activities that are incident to and necessary for the taxpayer's manufacturing of the subject matter of a long-term contract because the satellite could not be manufactured without the design and would not operate without the software. Thus, under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, C must allocate these non-long-term contract activities to the long-term contract and account for the gross receipts and costs attributable to designing the satellite and developing computer software using the PCM.

Example 7. Non-long-term contract activity. C agrees to manufacture equipment for B under a long-term contract. In a separate contract, C agrees to design the equipment being manufactured for B under the long-term contract. Under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, C must allocate the gross receipts and costs related to the design to the long-term contract because designing the equipment is a non-long-term contract activity that is incident to and necessary for the manufacture of the subject matter of the long-term contract.

Example 8. Severance. On January 1, 2001, C, a construction contractor, and B, a real estate investor, enter into an agreement requiring C to build two office buildings in different areas of a large city. The agreement provides that the two office buildings will be completed by C and accepted by B in 2002 and 2003, respectively, and that C will be paid $1,000,000 and $1,500,000 for the two office buildings, respectively. The agreement will provide C with a reasonable profit from the construction of each building. Unless C is required to use the PCM to account for the contract, C is required to sever this contract under paragraph (e)(2) of this section because the buildings are independently priced, the agreement provides for separate delivery and acceptance of the buildings, and, as each building will generate a reasonable profit, a reasonable businessperson would have entered into separate agreements for the terms agreed upon for each building.

Example 9. Severance. C, a large construction contractor whose taxable year ends December 31, accounts for its construction contracts using the PCM and has elected to use the 10-percent method described in §1.460–4(b)(6). In September 2001, C enters into an agreement to construct four buildings in four different cities. The buildings are independently priced and the contract provides a reasonable profit for each of the buildings. In addition, the agreement requires C to complete one building per year in 2002, 2003, 2004, and 2005. As of December 31, 2001, C has incurred 25 percent of the estimated total allocable contract costs attributable to one of the buildings, but only five percent of the estimated total allocable contract costs attributable to all four buildings included in the agreement. C does not request the Commissioner's consent to sever this contract. Using the 10-percent method, C does not take into account any portion of the total contract price or any incurred allocable contract costs attributable to this agreement in 2001. Upon examination of C's 2001 tax return, the Commissioner determines that C entered into one agreement for four buildings rather than four separate agreements each for one building solely to take advantage of the deferral obtained under the 10-percent method. Consequently, to clearly reflect the taxpayer's income, the Commissioner may require C to sever the agreement into four separate contracts under paragraph (e)(2) of this section because the buildings are independently priced, the agreement provides for separate delivery and acceptance of the buildings, and a reasonable businessperson would have entered into separate agreements for these buildings.

Example 10. Aggregation. In 2001, C, a shipbuilder, enters into two agreements with the Department of the Navy as the result of a single negotiation. Each agreement obligates C to manufacture a submarine. Because the submarines are of the same class, their specifications are similar. Because C has never manufactured submarines of this class, however, C anticipates that it will incur substantially higher costs to manufacture the first submarine, to be delivered in 2007, than to manufacture the second submarine, to be delivered in 2010. If the agreements are treated as separate contracts, the first contract probably will produce a substantial loss, while the second contract probably will produce substantial profit. Based upon these facts, aggregation is required under paragraph (e)(2) of this section because the submarines are interdependently priced and a reasonable businessperson would not have entered the first agreement without also entering into the second.

Example 11. Aggregation. In 2001, C, a manufacturer of aircraft and related equipment, agrees to manufacture 10 military aircraft for foreign government B and to deliver the aircraft by the end of 2003. When entering into the agreement, C anticipates that it might receive production orders from B over the next 20 years for as many as 300 more of these aircraft. The negotiated contract price reflects C's and B's consideration of the expected total cost of manufacturing the 10 aircraft, the risks and opportunities associated with the agreement, and the additional factors the parties considered relevant. The negotiated price provides a profit on the sale of the 10 aircraft even if C does not receive any additional production orders from B. It is unlikely, however, that C actually would have wanted to manufacture the 10 aircraft but for the expectation that it would receive additional production orders from B. In 2003, B accepts delivery of the 10 aircraft. At that time, B orders an additional 20 aircraft of the same type for delivery in 2007. When negotiating the price for the additional 20 aircraft, C and B consider the fact that the expected unit cost for this production run of 20 aircraft will be lower than the unit cost of the 10 aircraft completed and accepted in 2003, but substantially higher than the expected unit cost of future production runs. Based upon these facts, aggregation is not permitted under paragraph (e)(2) of this section. Because the parties negotiated the prices of both agreements considering only the expected production costs and risks for each agreement standing alone, the terms and conditions agreed upon for the first agreement are independent of the terms and conditions agreed upon for the second agreement. The fact that the agreement to manufacture 10 aircraft provides a profit for C indicates that a reasonable businessperson would have entered into that agreement without entering into the agreement to manufacture the additional 20 aircraft.

Example 12. Classification and completion. In 2001, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, agrees to manufacture and install an industrial machine for B. C elects under paragraph (f) of this section to classify the agreement as a long-term manufacturing contract and to account for it using the PCM. The agreement requires C to deliver the machine in August 2003 and to install and test the machine in B's factory. In addition, the agreement requires B to accept the machine when the tests prove that the machine's performance will satisfy the environmental standards set by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), even if B has not obtained the required operating permit. Because of technical difficulties, C cannot deliver the machine until December 2003, when B conditionally accepts delivery. C installs the machine in December 2003 and then tests it through February 2004. B accepts the machine in February 2004, but does not obtain the operating permit from the EPA until January 2005. Under paragraph (c)(3)(i)(B) of this section, C's contract is finally completed and accepted in February 2004, even though B does not obtain the operating permit until January 2005, because C completed all its obligations under the contract and B accepted the machine in February 2004.

[T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2225, Jan. 11, 2001; 66 FR 18357, Apr. 6, 2001]

§ 1.460–2 Long-term manufacturing contracts.

(a) *In general.* Section 460 generally requires a taxpayer to determine the income from a long-term manufacturing contract using the percentage-of-completion method described in §1.460–4(b) (PCM). A contract not completed in the contracting year is a long-term manufacturing contract if it involves the manufacture of personal property that is—

(1) A unique item of a type that is not normally carried in the finished goods inventory of the taxpayer; or

(2) An item that normally requires more than 12 calendar months to complete (regardless of the duration of the contract or the time to complete a deliverable quantity of the item).

(b) *Unique*—(1) *In general. Unique* means designed for the needs of a specific customer. To determine whether an item is designed for the needs of a specific customer, a taxpayer must consider the extent to which research, development, design, engineering, retooling, and similar activities (customizing activities) are required to manufacture the item and whether the item could be sold to other customers with little or no modification. A contract may require the taxpayer to manufacture more than one unit of a unique item. If a contract requires a taxpayer to manufacture more than one unit of the same item, the taxpayer must determine whether that item is unique by considering the customizing activities that would be needed to produce only the first unit. For the purposes of this paragraph (b), a taxpayer must consider the activities performed on its behalf by a subcontractor.

(2) *Safe harbors.* Notwithstanding paragraph (b)(1) of this section, an item is not unique if it satisfies one or more of the safe harbors in this paragraph (b)(2). If an item does not satisfy one or more safe harbors, the determination of uniqueness will depend on the facts and circumstances. The safe harbors are:

(i) *Short production period.* An item is not unique if it normally requires 90 days or less to complete. In the case of a contract for multiple units of an item, the item is not unique only if it normally requires 90 days or less to complete each unit of the item in the contract.

(ii) *Customized item.* An item is not unique if the total allocable contract costs attributable to customizing activities that are incident to or necessary for the manufacture of the item do not exceed 10 percent of the estimated total allocable contract costs allocable to the item. In the case of a contract for multiple units of an item, this comparison must be performed on the first unit of the item, and the total allocable contract costs attributable to customizing activities that are incident to or necessary for the manufacture of the first unit of the item must be allocated to that first unit.

(iii) *Inventoried item.* A unique item ceases to be unique no later than when the taxpayer normally includes similar items in its finished goods inventory.

(c) *Normal time to complete*—(1) *In general.* The amount of time normally required to complete an item is the item's reasonably expected *production period,* as described in §1.263A–12, determined at the end of the contracting year. Thus, in general, the expected production period for an item begins when a taxpayer incurs at least five percent of the costs that would be allocable to the item under §1.460–5 and ends when the item is ready to be held for sale and all reasonably expected production activities are complete. In the case of components that are assembled or reassembled into an item or unit at the customer's facility by the taxpayer's employees or agents, the production period ends when the components are assembled or reassembled into an operable item or unit. To the extent that several distinct activities related to the production of the item are expected to occur simultaneously, the period during which these distinct activities occur is not counted more than once. Furthermore, when determining the normal time to complete an item, a taxpayer is not required to consider activities performed or costs incurred that would not be allocable contract costs under section 460 (*e.g.,* independent research and development expenses (as defined in §1.460–1(b)(9)) and marketing expenses). Moreover, the time normally required to design and manufacture the first unit of an item for which the taxpayer intends to produce multiple units generally does not indicate the normal time to complete the item.

(2) *Production by related parties.* To determine the time normally required to complete an item, a taxpayer must consider all relevant production activities performed and costs incurred by itself and by related parties, as defined in §1.460–1(b)(4). For example, if a taxpayer's item requires a component or subassembly manufactured by a related party, the taxpayer must consider the time the related party takes to complete the component or subassembly and, for purposes of determining the beginning of an item's production period, the costs incurred by the related party that are allocable to the component or subassembly. However, if both requirements of the exception for components and subassemblies under §1.460–1(g)(1)(ii) are satisfied, a taxpayer does not consider the activities performed or the costs incurred by a related party when determining the normal time to complete an item.

(d) *Qualified ship contracts.* A taxpayer may determine the income from a long-term manufacturing contract that is a qualified ship contract using either the PCM or the percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method (PCCM) of accounting described in §1.460–4(e). A *qualified ship contract* is any contract entered into after February 28, 1986, to manufacture in the United States not more than 5 seagoing vessels if the vessels will not be manufactured directly or indirectly for the United States Government and if the taxpayer reasonably expects to complete the contract within 5 years of the contract commencement date. Under §1.460–1(e)(3)(i), a contract to produce more than 5 vessels for which the PCM would be required cannot be severed in order to be classified as a qualified ship contract.

(e) *Examples.* The following examples illustrate the rules of this section:

Example 1. Unique item and classification. In December 2001, C enters into a contract with B to design and manufacture a new type of industrial equipment. C reasonably expects the normal production period for this type of equipment to be eight months. Because the new type of industrial equipment requires a substantial amount of research, design, and engineering to produce, C determines that the equipment is a unique item and its contract with B is a long-term contract. After delivering the equipment to B in September 2002, C contracts with B to produce five additional units of that industrial equipment with certain different specifications. These additional units, which also are expected to take eight months to produce, will be delivered to B in 2003. C determines that the research, design, engineering, retooling, and similar customizing costs necessary to produce the five additional units of equipment does not exceed 10 percent of the first unit's share of estimated total allocable contract costs. Consequently, the additional units of equipment satisfy the safe harbor in paragraph (b)(2)(ii) of this section and are not unique items. Although C's contract with B to produce the five additional units is not completed within the contracting year, the contract is not a long-term contract since the additional units of equipment are not unique items and do not normally require more than 12 months to produce. C must classify its second contract with B as a non-long term contract, notwithstanding that it classified the previous contract with B for a similar item as a long-term contract, because the determination of whether a contract is a long-term contract is made on a contract-by-contract basis. A change in classification is not a change in method of accounting because the change in classification results from a change in underlying facts.

Example 2. 12-month rule—related party. C manufactures cranes. C purchases one of the crane's components from R, a related party under §1.460–1(b)(4). Less than 50 percent of R's gross receipts attributable to the sale of this component comes from sales to unrelated parties; thus, the exception for components and subassemblies under §1.460–1(g)(1)(ii) is not satisfied. Consequently, C must consider the activities of R as R incurs costs and performs the activities rather than as C incurs a liability to R. The normal time period between the time that both C and R incur five percent of the costs allocable to the crane and the time that R completes the component is five months. C normally requires an additional eight months to complete production of the crane after receiving the integral component from R. C's crane is an item of a type that normally requires more than 12 months to complete under paragraph (c) of this section because the production period from the time that both C and R incur five percent of the costs allocable to the crane until the time that production of the crane is complete is normally 13 months.

Example 3. 12-month rule—duration of contract. The facts are the same as in *Example 2*, except that C enters into a sales contract with B on December 31, 2001 (the last day of C's taxable year), and delivers a completed crane to B on February 1, 2002. C's contract with B is a long-term contract under paragraph (a)(2) of this section because the contract is not completed in the contracting year, 2001, and the crane is an item that normally requires more than 12 calendar months to complete (regardless of the duration of the contract).

Example 4. 12-month rule—normal time to complete. The facts are the same as in *Example 2*, except that C (and R) actually complete B's crane in only 10 calendar months. The contract is a long-term contract because the normal time to complete a crane, not the actual time to complete a crane, is the relevant criterion for determining whether an item is subject to paragraph (a)(2) of this section.

Example 5. Normal time to complete. C enters into a multi-unit contract to produce four units of an item. C does not anticipate producing any additional units of the item. C expects to perform the research, design, and development that are directly allocable to the particular item and to produce the first unit in the first 24 months. C reasonably expects the production period for each of the three remaining units will be 3 months. This contract is not a contract that involves the manufacture of an item that normally requires more than 12 months to complete because the normal time to complete the item is 3 months. However, the contract does not satisfy the 90-day safe harbor for unique items because the normal time to complete the first unit of this item exceeds 90 days. Thus, the contract might involve the manufacture of a unique item depending on the facts and circumstances.

[T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2230, Jan. 11, 2001; 66 FR 18191, Apr. 6, 2001]

§ 1.460–3 Long-term construction contracts.

(a) *In general.* Section 460 generally requires a taxpayer to determine the income from a long-term construction contract using the percentage-of-completion method described in §1.460–4(b) (PCM). A contract not completed in the contracting year is a long-term construction contract if it involves the building, construction, reconstruction, or rehabilitation of real property; the installation of an integral component to real property; or the improvement of real property (collectively referred to as construction). *Real property* means land, buildings, and *inherently permanent structures*, as defined in § 1.263A–8(c)(3), such as roadways, dams, and bridges. Real property does not include vessels, offshore drilling platforms, or unsevered natural products of land. An *integral component to real property* includes property not produced at the site of the real property but intended to be permanently affixed to the real property, such as elevators and central heating and cooling systems. Thus, for example, a contract to install an elevator in a building is a construction contract because a building is real property, but a contract to install an elevator in a ship is not a construction contract because a ship is not real property.

(b) *Exempt construction contracts*—(1) *In general.* The general requirement to use the PCM and the cost allocation rules described in § 1.460–5(b) or (c) does not apply to any long-term construction contract described in this paragraph (b) (exempt construction contract). *Exempt construction contract* means any—

(i) Home construction contract; and

(ii) Other construction contract that a taxpayer estimates (when entering into the contract) will be completed within 2 years of the contract commencement date, provided the taxpayer satisfies the $10,000,000 gross receipts test described in paragraph (b)(3) of this section.

(2) *Home construction contract*—(i) *In general.* A long-term construction contract is a *home construction contract* if a taxpayer (including a subcontractor working for a general contractor) reasonably expects to attribute 80 percent or more of the estimated total allocable contract costs (including the cost of land, materials, and services), determined as of the close of the contracting year, to the construction of—

(A) Dwelling units, as defined in section 168(e)(2)(A)(ii)(I), contained in buildings containing 4 or fewer dwelling units (including buildings with 4 or fewer dwelling units that also have commercial units); and

(B) Improvements to real property directly related to, and located at the site of, the dwelling units.

(ii) *Townhouses and rowhouses.* Each townhouse or rowhouse is a separate building.

(iii) *Common improvements.* A taxpayer includes in the cost of the dwelling units their allocable share of the cost that the taxpayer reasonably expects to incur for any common improvements (e.g., sewers, roads, clubhouses) that benefit the dwelling units and that the taxpayer is contractually obligated, or required by law, to construct within the tract or tracts of land that contain the dwelling units.

(iv) *Mixed use costs.* If a contract involves the construction of both commercial units and dwelling units within the same building, a taxpayer must allocate the costs among the commercial units and dwelling units using a reasonable method or combination of reasonable methods, such as specific identification, square footage, or fair market value.

(3) *$10,000,000 gross receipts test*—(i) *In general.* Except as otherwise provided in paragraphs (b)(3)(ii) and (iii) of this section, the $10,000,000 gross receipts test is satisfied if a taxpayer's (or predecessor's) average annual gross receipts for the 3 taxable years preceding the contracting year do not exceed $10,000,000, as determined using the principles of the gross receipts test for small resellers under § 1.263A–3(b).

(ii) *Single employer.* To apply the gross receipts test, a taxpayer is not required to aggregate the gross receipts of persons treated as a single employer solely under section 414(m) and any regulations prescribed under section 414.

(iii) *Attribution of gross receipts.* A taxpayer must aggregate a proportionate share of the construction-related gross receipts of any person that has a five percent or greater interest in the taxpayer. In addition, a taxpayer must aggregate a proportionate share of the construction-related gross receipts of any person in which the taxpayer has a five percent or greater interest. For this purpose, a taxpayer must determine ownership interests as of the first day of the taxpayer's contracting year and must include indirect interests in any corporation, partnership, estate, trust, or sole proprietorship according to principles similar to the constructive ownership rules under sections 1563(e), (f)(2), and (f)(3)(A). However, a taxpayer is not required to aggregate under this paragraph (b)(3)(iii) any construction-related gross receipts required to be aggregated under paragraph (b)(3)(i) of this section.

(c) *Residential construction contracts.* A taxpayer may determine the income from a long-term construction contract that is a residential construction contract using either the PCM or the percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method (PCCM) of accounting described in §1.460–4(e). A *residential construction contract* is a home construction contract, as defined in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, except that the building or buildings being constructed contain more than 4 dwelling units.

[T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2231, Jan. 11, 2001]

§1.460–4 Methods of accounting for long-term contracts.

(a) *Overview.* This section prescribes permissible methods of accounting for long-term contracts. Paragraph (b) of this section describes the percentage-of-completion method under section 460(b) (PCM) that a taxpayer generally must use to determine the income from a long-term contract. Paragraph (c) of this section lists permissible methods of accounting for exempt construction contracts described in §1.460–3(b)(1) and describes the exempt-contract percentage-of-completion method (EPCM). Paragraph (d) of this section describes the completed-contract method (CCM), which is one of the permissible methods of accounting for exempt construction contracts. Paragraph (e) of this section describes the percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method (PCCM), which is a permissible method of accounting for qualified ship contracts described in §1.460–2(d) and residential construction contracts described in §1.460–3(c). Paragraph (f) of this section provides rules for determining the alternative minimum taxable income (AMTI) from long-term contracts that are not exempted under section 56. Paragraph (g) of this section provides rules concerning consistency in methods of accounting for long-term contracts. Paragraph (h) of this section provides examples illustrating the principles of this section. Paragraph (j) of this section provides rules for taxpayers that file consolidated tax returns. Finally, paragraph (k) of this section provides rules relating to a mid-contract change in taxpayer of a contract accounted for using a long-term contract method of accounting.

(b) *Percentage-of-completion method*—(1) *In general.* Under the PCM, a taxpayer generally must include in income the portion of the *total contract price,* as defined in paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this section, that corresponds to the percentage of the entire contract that the taxpayer has completed during the taxable year. The percentage of completion must be determined by comparing allocable contract costs incurred with estimated total allocable contract costs. Thus, the taxpayer includes a portion of the total contract price in gross income as the taxpayer incurs allocable contract costs.

(2) *Computations.* To determine the income from a long-term contract, a taxpayer—

(i) Computes the *completion factor* for the contract, which is the ratio of the cumulative allocable contract costs that the taxpayer has incurred through the end of the taxable year to the estimated total allocable contract costs that the taxpayer reasonably expects to incur under the contract;

(ii) Computes the amount of *cumulative gross receipts* from the contract by multiplying the completion factor by the total contract price;

(iii) Computes the amount of *current-year gross receipts,* which is the difference between the amount of cumulative gross receipts for the current taxable year and the amount of cumulative gross receipts for the immediately preceding taxable year (the difference can be a positive or negative number); and

(iv) Takes both the current-year gross receipts and the allocable contract costs incurred during the current year into account in computing taxable income.

(3) *Post-completion-year income.* If a taxpayer has not included the total contract price in gross income by the completion year, as defined in §1.460–1(b)(6), the taxpayer must include the remaining portion of the total contract

price in gross income for the taxable year following the completion year. For the treatment of post-completion-year costs, see paragraph (b)(5)(v) of this section. See §1.460–6(c)(1)(ii) for application of the look-back method as a result of adjustments to total contract price.

(4) *Total contract price*—(i) *In general*—(A) *Definition. Total contract price* means the amount that a taxpayer reasonably expects to receive under a long-term contract, including holdbacks, retainages, and cost reimbursements. See §1.460–6(c)(1)(ii) and (2)(vi) for application of the look-back method as a result of changes in total contract price.

(B) *Contingent compensation.* Any amount related to a contingent right under a contract, such as a bonus, award, incentive payment, and amount in dispute, is included in total contract price as soon as the taxpayer can reasonably predict that the amount will be earned, even if the all events test has not yet been met. For example, if a bonus is payable to a taxpayer for meeting an early completion date, the bonus is includible in total contract price at the time and to the extent that the taxpayer can reasonably predict the achievement of the corresponding objective. Similarly, a portion of the contract price that is in dispute is includible in total contract price at the time and to the extent that the taxpayer can reasonably predict that the dispute will be resolved in the taxpayer's favor (regardless of when the taxpayer actually receives payment or when the dispute is finally resolved). Total contract price does not include compensation that might be earned under any other agreement that the taxpayer expects to obtain from the same customer (*e.g.*, exercised option or follow-on contract) if that other agreement is not aggregated under §1.460–1(e). For the purposes of this paragraph (b)(4)(i)(B), a taxpayer can reasonably predict that an amount of contingent income will be earned not later than when the taxpayer includes that amount in income for financial reporting purposes under generally accepted accounting principles. If a taxpayer has not included an amount of contingent compensation in total contract price under this paragraph (b)(4)(i) by the taxable year following the completion year, the taxpayer must account for that amount of contingent compensation using a permissible method of accounting. If it is determined after the taxable year following the completion year that an amount included in total contract price will not be earned, the taxpayer should deduct that amount in the year of the determination.

(C) *Non-long-term contract activities.* Total contract price includes an allocable share of the gross receipts attributable to a non-long-term contract activity, as defined in §1.460–1(d)(2), if the activity is incident to or necessary for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of the subject matter of the long-term contract. Total contract price also includes amounts reimbursed for independent research and development expenses (as defined in §1.460–1(b)(9)), or for bidding and proposal costs, under a federal or cost-plus long-term contract (as defined in section 460(d)), regardless of whether the research and development, or bidding and proposal, activities are incident to or necessary for the performance of that long-term contract.

(ii) *Estimating total contract price.* A taxpayer must estimate the total contract price based upon all the facts and circumstances known as of the last day of the taxable year. For this purpose, an event that occurs after the end of the taxable year must be taken into account if its occurrence was reasonably predictable and its income was subject to reasonable estimation as of the last day of that taxable year.

(5) *Completion factor*—(i) *Allocable contract costs.* A taxpayer must use a cost allocation method permitted under either §1.460–5(b) or (c) to determine the amount of cumulative allocable contract costs and estimated total allocable contract costs that are used to determine a contract's completion factor. Allocable contract costs include a reimbursable cost that is allocable to the contract.

(ii) *Cumulative allocable contract costs.* To determine a contract's completion factor for a taxable year, a taxpayer must take into account the cumulative allocable contract costs that have been incurred, as defined in §1.460–1(b)(8), through the end of the taxable year.

(iii) *Estimating total allocable contract costs.* A taxpayer must estimate total allocable contract costs for each long-term contract based upon all the facts and circumstances known as of the last day of the taxable year. For this purpose, an event that occurs after the end of the taxable year must be taken into account if its occurrence was reasonably predictable and its cost was subject to reasonable estimation as of the last day of that taxable year. To be considered reasonable, an estimate of total allocable contract costs must include costs attributable to delay, rework, change orders, technology or design problems, or other problems that reasonably can be predicted considering the nature of the contract and prior experience. However, estimated total allocable contract costs do not include any contingency allowance for costs that, as of the end of the taxable year, are not reasonably predicted to be incurred in the performance of the contract. For example, estimated total allocable contract costs do not include any costs attributable to factors not reasonably predictable at the end of the taxable year, such as third-party litigation, extreme weather conditions, strikes, and delays in securing required permits and licenses. In addition, the estimated costs of performing other agreements that are not aggregated with the contract under §1.460–1(e) that the taxpayer expects to incur with the same customer (*e.g.*, follow-on contracts) are not included in estimated total allocable contract costs for the initial contract.

(iv) *Pre-contracting-year costs.* If a taxpayer reasonably expects to enter into a long-term contract in a future taxable year, the taxpayer must capitalize all costs incurred prior to entering into the contract that will be allocable to that contract (*e.g.*, bidding and proposal costs). A taxpayer is not required to compute a completion factor, or to include in gross income any amount, related to allocable contract costs for any taxable year ending before the contracting year or, if applicable, the 10-percent year defined in paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section. In that year, the taxpayer is required to compute a completion factor that includes all allocable contract costs that have been incurred as of the end of that taxable year (whether previously capitalized or deducted) and to take into account in computing taxable income the related gross receipts and the previously capitalized allocable contract costs. If, however, a taxpayer determines in a subsequent year that it will not enter into the long-term contract, the taxpayer must account for these pre-contracting-year costs in that year (*e.g.*, as a deduction or an inventoriable cost) using the appropriate rules contained in other sections of the Code or regulations.

(v) *Post-completion-year costs.* If a taxpayer incurs an allocable contract cost after the completion year, the taxpayer must account for that cost using a permissible method of accounting. See §1.460–6(c)(1)(ii) for application of the look-back method as a result of adjustments to allocable contract costs.

(6) *10-percent method*—(i) *In general.* Instead of determining the income from a long-term contract beginning with the contracting year, a taxpayer may elect to use the 10-percent method under section 460(b)(5). Under the 10-percent method, a taxpayer does not include in gross income any amount related to allocable contract costs until the taxable year in which the taxpayer has incurred at least 10 percent of the estimated total allocable contract costs (10-percent year). A taxpayer must treat costs incurred before the 10-percent year as pre-contracting-year costs described in paragraph (b)(5)(iv) of this section.

(ii) *Election.* A taxpayer makes an election under this paragraph (b)(6) by using the 10-percent method for all long-term contracts entered into during the taxable year of the election on its original federal income tax return for the election year. This election is a method of accounting and, thus, applies to all long-term contracts entered into during and after the taxable year of the election. An electing taxpayer must use the 10-percent method to apply the look-back method under §1.460–6 and to determine alternative minimum taxable income under paragraph (f) of this section. This election is not available if a taxpayer uses the simplified cost-to-cost method described in §1.460-5(c) to compute the completion factor of a long-term contract.

(7) *Terminated contract*—(i) *Reversal of income.* If a long-term contract is terminated before completion and, as a result, the taxpayer retains ownership of the property that is the subject matter of that contract, the taxpayer must reverse the transaction in the taxable year of termination. To reverse the transaction, the taxpayer reports a loss (or gain) equal to the cumulative allocable contract costs reported under the contract in all prior taxable years less the cumulative gross receipts reported under the contract in all prior taxable years.

(ii) *Adjusted basis.* As a result of reversing the transaction under paragraph (b)(7)(i) of this section, a taxpayer will have an adjusted basis in the retained property equal to the cumulative allocable contract costs reported under the contract in all prior taxable years. However, if the taxpayer received and retains any consideration or compensation from the customer, the taxpayer must reduce the adjusted basis in the retained property (but not below zero) by the fair market value of that consideration or compensation. To the extent that the amount of the consideration or compensation described in the preceding sentence exceeds the adjusted basis in the retained property, the taxpayer must include the excess in gross income for the taxable year of termination.

(iii) *Look-back method.* The look-back method does not apply to a terminated contract that is subject to this paragraph (b)(7).

(c) *Exempt contract methods*—(1) *In general.* An *exempt contract method* means the method of accounting that a taxpayer must use to account for all its long-term contracts (and any portion of a long-term contract) that are exempt from the requirements of section 460(a). Thus, an exempt contract method applies to exempt construction contracts, as defined in §1.460–3(b); the non-PCM portion of a qualified ship contract, as defined in §1.460–2(d); and the non-PCM portion of a residential construction contract, as defined in §1.460–3(c). Permissible exempt contract methods include the PCM, the EPCM described in paragraph (c)(2) of this section, the CCM described in paragraph (d) of this section, or any other permissible method. See section 446.

(2) *Exempt-contract percentage-of-completion method*—(i) *In general.* Similar to the PCM described in paragraph (b) of this section, a taxpayer using the EPCM generally must include in income the portion of the total contract price, as described in paragraph (b)(4) of this section, that corresponds to the percentage of the entire contract that the taxpayer has completed during the taxable year. However, under the EPCM, the percentage of completion may be determined as of the end of the taxable year by using any method of cost comparison (such as comparing direct labor costs incurred to date to estimated total direct labor costs) or by comparing the work performed on the contract with the estimated total work to be performed, rather than by using the cost-to-cost comparison required by paragraphs (b)(2)(i) and (5) of this section, provided such method is used consistently and clearly reflects income. In addition, paragraph (b)(3) of this section (regarding post-completion-year income), paragraph (b)(6) of this section (regarding the 10-percent method) and §1.460–6 (regarding the look-back method) do not apply to the EPCM.

(ii) *Determination of work performed.* For purposes of the EPCM, the criteria used to compare the work performed on a contract as of the end of the taxable year with the estimated total work to be performed must clearly reflect the earning of income with respect to the contract. For example, in the case of a roadbuilder, a standard of completion solely based on miles of roadway completed in a case where the terrain is substantially different may not clearly reflect the earning of income with respect to the contract.

(d) *Completed-contract method*—(1) *In general.* Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (d)(4) of this section, a taxpayer using the CCM to account for a long-term contract must take into account in the contract's completion year, as defined in §1.460–1(b)(6), the gross contract price and all allocable contract costs incurred by the completion year. A taxpayer may not treat the cost of any materials and supplies that are allocated to a contract, but actually remain on hand when the contract is completed, as an allocable contract cost.

(2) *Post-completion-year income and costs.* If a taxpayer has not included an item of contingent compensation (*i.e.*, amounts for which the all events test has not been satisfied) in gross contract price under paragraph (d)(3) of this section by the completion year, the taxpayer must account for this item of contingent compensation using a permissible method of accounting. If a taxpayer incurs an allocable contract cost after the completion year, the taxpayer must account for that cost using a permissible method of accounting.

(3) *Gross contract price.* Gross contract price includes all amounts (including holdbacks, retainages, and reimbursements) that a taxpayer is entitled by law or contract to receive, whether or not the amounts are due or have been paid. In addition, gross contract price includes all bonuses, awards, and incentive payments, such as a bonus for meeting an early completion date, to the extent the all events test is satisfied. If a taxpayer performs a non-long-term contract activity, as defined in §1.460–1(d)(2), that is incident to or necessary for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of the subject matter of one or more of the taxpayer's long-term contracts, the taxpayer must include an allocable share of the gross receipts attributable to that activity in the gross contract price of the contract(s) benefitted by that activity. Gross contract price also includes amounts reimbursed for independent research and development expenses (as defined in §1.460–1(b)(9)), or bidding and proposal costs, under a federal or cost-plus long-term contract (as defined in section 460(d)), regardless of whether the research and development, or bidding and proposal, activities are incident to or necessary for the performance of that long-term contract.

(4) *Contracts with disputed claims*—(i) *In general.* The special rules in this paragraph (d)(4) apply to a long-term contract accounted for using the CCM with a dispute caused by a customer's requesting a reduction of the gross contract price or the performance of additional work under the contract or by a taxpayer's requesting an increase in gross contract price, or both, on or after the date a taxpayer has tendered the subject matter of the contract to the customer.

(ii) *Taxpayer assured of profit or loss.* If the disputed amount relates to a customer's claim for either a reduction in price or additional work and the taxpayer is assured of either a profit or a loss on a long-term contract regardless of the outcome of the dispute, the gross contract price, reduced (but not below zero) by the amount reasonably in dispute, must be taken into account in the completion year. If the disputed amount relates to a taxpayer's claim for an increase in price and the taxpayer is assured of either a profit or a loss on a long-term contract regardless of the outcome of the dispute, the gross contract price must be taken into account in the completion year. If the taxpayer is assured a profit on the contract, all allocable contract costs incurred by the end of the completion year are taken into account in that year. If the taxpayer is assured a loss on the contract, all allocable contract costs incurred by the end of the completion year, reduced by the amount reasonably in dispute, are taken into account in the completion year.

(iii) *Taxpayer unable to determine profit or loss.* If the amount reasonably in dispute affects so much of the gross contract price or allocable contract costs that a taxpayer cannot determine whether a profit or loss ultimately will be realized from a long-term contract, the taxpayer may not take any of the gross contract price or allocable contract costs into account in the completion year.

(iv) *Dispute resolved.* Any part of the gross contract price and any allocable contract costs that have not been taken into account because of the principles described in paragraph (d)(4)(i), (ii), or (iii) of this section must be taken into account in the taxable year in which the dispute is resolved. If a taxpayer performs additional work under the contract because of the dispute, the term *taxable year in which the dispute is resolved* means the taxable year the additional work is completed, rather than the taxable year in which the outcome of the dispute is determined by agreement, decision, or otherwise.

(e) *Percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method.* Under the PCCM, a taxpayer must determine the income from a long-term contract using the PCM for the applicable percentage of the contract and its exempt contract method, as defined in paragraph (c) of this section, for the remaining percentage of the contract. For residential construction contracts described in §1.460–3(c), the applicable percentage is 70 percent, and the remaining percentage is 30 percent. For qualified ship contracts described in §1.460–2(d), the applicable percentage is 40 percent, and the remaining percentage is 60 percent.

(f) *Alternative minimum taxable income*—(1) *In general.* Under section 56(a)(3), a taxpayer (not exempt from the AMT under section 55(e)) must use the PCM to determine its AMTI from any long-term contract entered into on or after March 1, 1986, that is not a home construction contract, as defined in §1.460–3(b)(2). For AMTI purposes, the PCM must include any election under paragraph (b)(6) of this section (concerning the 10-percent method) or under §1.460–5(c) (concerning the simplified cost-to-cost method) that the taxpayer has made for regular tax purposes. For exempt construction contracts described in §1.460–3(b)(1)(ii), a taxpayer must use the simplified cost-to-cost method to determine the completion factor for AMTI purposes. Except as provided in paragraph (f)(2) of this section, a taxpayer must use AMTI costs and AMTI methods, such as the depreciation method described in section 56(a)(1), to determine the completion factor of a long-term contract (except a home construction contract) for AMTI purposes.

(2) *Election to use regular completion factors.* Under this paragraph (f)(2), a taxpayer may elect for AMTI purposes to determine the completion factors of all of its long-term contracts using the methods of accounting and allocable contract costs used for regular federal income tax purposes. A taxpayer makes this election by using regular methods and regular costs to compute the completion factors of all long-term contracts entered into during the taxable year of the election for AMTI purposes on its original federal income tax return for the election year. This election is a method of accounting and, thus, applies to all long-term contracts entered into during and after the taxable year of the election. Although a taxpayer may elect to compute the completion factor of its long-term contracts using regular methods and regular costs, an election under this paragraph (f)(2) does not eliminate a taxpayer's obligation to comply with the requirements of section 55 when computing AMTI. For example, although a taxpayer may elect to use the depreciation methods used for regular tax purposes to compute the completion factor of its long-term contracts for AMTI purposes, the taxpayer must use the depreciation methods permitted by section 56 to compute AMTI.

(g) *Method of accounting.* A taxpayer that uses the PCM, EPCM, CCM, or PCCM, or elects the 10-percent method or special AMTI method (or changes to another method of accounting with the Commissioner's consent) must apply the method(s) consistently for all similarly classified long-term contracts, until the taxpayer obtains the Commissioner's consent under section 446(e) to change to another method of accounting. A taxpayer-initiated change in method of accounting will be permitted only on a cut-off basis (*i.e.*, for contracts entered into on or after the year of change), and thus, a section 481(a) adjustment will not be permitted or required.

(h) *Examples.* The following examples illustrate the rules of this section:

Example 1. PCM—estimating total contract price. C, whose taxable year ends December 31, determines the income from long-term contracts using the PCM. On January 1, 2001, C enters into a contract to design and manufacture a satellite (a unique item). The contract provides that C will be paid $10,000,000 for delivering the completed satellite by December 1, 2002. The contract also provides that C will receive a $3,000,000 bonus for delivering the satellite by July 1, 2002, and an additional $4,000,000 bonus if the satellite successfully performs its mission for five years. C is unable to reasonably predict if the satellite will successfully perform its mission for five years. If on December 31, 2001, C should reasonably expect to deliver the satellite by July 1, 2002, the estimated total contract price is $13,000,000 ($10,000,000 unit price + $3,000,000 production-related bonus). Otherwise, the estimated total contract price is $10,000,000. In either event, the $4,000,000 bonus is not includible in the estimated total contract price as of December 31, 2001, because C is unable to reasonably predict that the satellite will successfully perform its mission for five years.

Example 2. PCM—computing income. (i) C, whose taxable year ends December 31, determines the income from long-term contracts using the PCM. During 2001, C agrees to manufacture for the customer, B, a unique item for a total contract price of $1,000,000. Under C's contract, B is entitled to retain 10 percent of the total contract price until it accepts the item. By the end of 2001, C has incurred $200,000 of allocable contract costs and estimates that the total allocable contract costs will be $800,000. By the end of 2002, C has incurred $600,000 of allocable contract costs and estimates that the total allocable contract costs will be $900,000. In 2003, after completing the contract, C determines that the actual cost to manufacture the item was $750,000.

(ii) For each of the taxable years, C's income from the contract is computed as follows:

	Taxable Year		
	2001	2002	2003
(A) Cumulative incurred costs	$200,000	$600,000	$750,000
(B) Estimated total costs	800,000	900,000	750,000
(C) Completion factor: (A) ÷ (B)	25.00%	66.67%	100.00%
(D) Total contract price	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000
(E) Cumulative gross receipts: (C)×(D)	250,000	666,667	1,000,000
(F) Cumulative gross receipts (prior year)	(0)	(250,000)	(666,667)
(G) Current-year gross receipts	250,000	416,667	333,333
(H) Cumulative incurred costs	200,000	600,000	750,000
(I) Cumulative incurred costs (prior year)	(0)	(200,000)	(600,000)
(J) Current-year costs	200,000	400,000	150,000
(K) Gross income: (G) − (J)	$50,000	$16,667	$183,333

Example 3. PCM—computing income with cost sharing. (i) C, whose taxable year ends December 31, determines the income from long-term contracts using the PCM. During 2001, C enters into a contract to manufacture a unique item. The contract specifies a target price of $1,000,000, a target cost of $600,000, and a target profit of $400,000. C and B will share the savings of any cost underrun (actual total incurred cost is less than target cost) and the additional cost of any cost overrun (actual total incurred cost is greater than target cost) as follows: 30 percent to C and 70 percent to B. By the end of 2001, C has incurred $200,000 of allocable contract costs and estimates that the total allocable contract costs will be $600,000. By the end of 2002, C has incurred $300,000 of allocable contract costs and estimates that the total allocable contract costs will be $400,000. In 2003, after completing the contract, C determines that the actual cost to manufacture the item was $700,000.

(ii) For each of the taxable years, C's income from the contract is computed as follows (note that the sharing of any cost underrun or cost overrun is reflected as an adjustment to C's target price under paragraph (b)(4)(i) of this section):

	Taxable Year		
	2001	2002	2003
(A) Cumulative incurred costs	$200,000	$300,000	$700,000
(B) Estimated total costs	600,000	400,000	700,000
(C) Completion factor: (A) ÷ (B)	33.33%	75.00%	100.00%
(D) Target price	$1,000,000	$1,000,000	$1,000,000
(E) Estimated total costs	600,000	400,000	700,000
(F) Target costs	600,000	600,000	600,000
(G) Cost (underrun)/overrun: (E) − (F)	0	(200,000)	100,000

	Taxable Year		
	2001	2002	2003
(H) Adjustment rate	70%	70%	70%
(I) Target price adjustment	0	(140,000)	70,000
(J) Total contract price: (D) + (I)	$1,000,000	$860,000	$1,070,000
(K) Cumulative gross receipts: (C)×(J)	$333,333	$645,000	$1,070,000
(L) Cumulative gross receipts (prior year):	(0)	(333,333)	(645,000)
(M) Current-year gross receipts	333,333	311,667	425,000
(N) Cumulative incurred costs	200,000	300,000	700,000
(O) Cumulative incurred costs (prior year):	(0)	(200,000)	(300,000)
(P) Current-year costs	200,000	100,000	400,000
(Q) Gross income: (M) − (P)	$133,333	$211,667	$25,000

Example 4. PCM—10 percent method. (i) C, whose taxable year ends December 31, determines the income from long-term contracts using the PCM. In November 2001, C agrees to manufacture a unique item for $1,000,000. C reasonably estimates that the total allocable contract costs will be $600,000. By December 31, 2001, C has received $50,000 in progress payments and incurred $40,000 of costs. C elects to use the 10 percent method effective for 2001 and all subsequent taxable years. During 2002, C receives $500,000 in progress payments and incurs $260,000 of costs. In 2003, C incurs an additional $300,000 of costs, C finishes manufacturing the item, and receives the final $450,000 payment.

(ii) For each of the taxable years, C's income from the contract is computed as follows:

	Taxable Year		
	2001	2002	2003
(A) Cumulative incurred costs	$40,000	$300,000	$600,000
(B) Estimated total costs	600,000	600,000	600,000
(C) Completion factor (A) ÷ (B)	6.67%	50.00%	100.00%
(D) Total contract price	1,000,000	1,000,000	1,000,000
(E) Cumulative gross receipts: (C)×(D)*	0	500,000	1,000,000
(F) Cumulative gross receipts (prior year):	(0)	(0)	(500,000)
(G) Current-year gross receipts	0	500,000	500,000
(H) Cumulative incurred costs	0	300,000	600,000
(I) Cumulative incurred costs (prior year):	(0)	(0)	(300,000)
(J) Current-year costs	0	300,000	300,000
(K) Gross income: (G) − (J)	$0	$200,000	$200,000

*Unless (C) <10 percent.

Example 5. PCM—contract terminated. C, whose taxable year ends December 31, determines the income from long-term contracts using the PCM. During 2001, C buys land and begins constructing a building that will contain 50 condominium units on that land. C enters into a contract to sell one unit in this condominium to B for $240,000. B gives C a $5,000 deposit toward the purchase price. By the end of 2001, C has incurred $50,000 of allocable contract costs on B's unit and estimates that the total allocable contract costs on B's unit will be $150,000. Thus, for 2001, C reports gross receipts of $80,000 ($50,000÷$150,000×$240,000), current-year costs of $50,000, and gross income of $30,000 ($80,000 − $50,000). In 2002, after C has incurred an additional $25,000 of allocable contract costs on B's unit, B files for bankruptcy protection and defaults on the contract with C, who is permitted to keep B's $5,000 deposit as liquidated damages. In 2002, C reverses the transaction with B under paragraph (b)(7) of this section and reports a loss of $30,000

($50,000 − $80,000). In addition, C obtains an adjusted basis in the unit sold to B of $70,000 ($50,000 (current-year costs deducted in 2001) − $5,000 (B's forfeited deposit) + $25,000 (current-year costs incurred in 2002). C may not apply the look-back method to this contract in 2002.

Example 6. CCM—contracts with disputes from customer claims. In 2001, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, uses the CCM to account for exempt construction contracts. C enters into a contract to construct a bridge for B. The terms of the contract provide for a $1,000,000 gross contract price. C finishes the bridge in 2002 at a cost of $950,000. When B examines the bridge, B insists that C either repaint several girders or reduce the contract price. The amount reasonably in dispute is $10,000. In 2003, C and B resolve their dispute, C repaints the girders at a cost of $6,000, and C and B agree that the contract price is not to be reduced. Because C is assured a profit of $40,000 ($1,000,000 − $10,000 − $950,000) in 2002 even if the dispute is resolved in B's favor, C must take this $40,000 into account in 2002. In 2003, C will earn an additional $4,000 profit ($1,000,000 − $956,000 − $40,000) from the contract with B. Thus, C must take into account an additional $10,000 of gross contract price and $6,000 of additional contract costs in 2003.

Example 7. CCM—contracts with disputes from taxpayer claims. In 2003, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, uses the CCM to account for exempt construction contracts. C enters into a contract to construct a building for B. The terms of the contract provide for a $1,000,000 gross contract price. C finishes the building in 2004 at a cost of $1,005,000. B examines the building in 2004 and agrees that it meets the contract's specifications; however, at the end of 2004, C and B are unable to agree on the merits of C's claim for an additional $10,000 for items that C alleges are changes in contract specifications and B alleges are within the scope of the contract's original specifications. In 2005, B agrees to pay C an additional $2,000 to satisfy C's claims under the contract. Because the amount in dispute affects so much of the gross contract price that C cannot determine in 2004 whether a profit or loss will ultimately be realized, C may not taken any of the gross contract price or allocable contract costs into account in 2004. C must take into account $1,002,000 of gross contract price and $1,005,000 of allocable contract costs in 2005.

Example 8. CCM—contracts with disputes from taxpayer and customer claims. C, whose taxable year ends December 31, uses the CCM to account for exempt construction contracts. C constructs a factory for B pursuant to a long-term contract. Under the terms of the contract, B agrees to pay C a total of $1,000,000 for construction of the factory. C finishes construction of the factory in 2002 at a cost of $1,020,000. When B takes possession of the factory and begins operations in December 2002, B is dissatisfied with the location and workmanship of certain heating ducts. As of the end of 2002, C contends that the heating ducts are constructed in accordance with contract specifications. The amount of the gross contract price reasonably in dispute with respect to the heating ducts is $6,000. As of this time, C is claiming $14,000 in addition to the original contract price for certain changes in contract specifications which C alleges have increased his costs. B denies that these changes have increased C's costs. In 2003, the disputes between C and B are resolved by performance of additional work by C at a cost of $1,000 and by an agreement that the contract price would be revised downward to $996,000. Under these circumstances, C must include in his gross income for 2002, $994,000 (the gross contract price less the amount reasonably in dispute because of B's claim, or $1,000,000 − $6,000). In 2002, C must also take into account $1,000,000 of allocable contract costs (costs incurred less the amounts in dispute attributable to both B's and C's claims, or $1,020,000 − $6,000 − $14,000). In 2003, C must take into account an additional $2,000 of gross contract price ($996,000 − $994,000) and $21,000 of allocable contract costs ($1,021,000 − $1,000,000).

(i) [Reserved]

(j) *Consolidated groups and controlled groups*—(1) *Intercompany transactions*—(i) *In general.* Section 1.1502–13 does not apply to the income, gain, deduction, or loss from an intercompany transaction between members of a consolidated group, and section 267(f) does not apply to these items from an intercompany sale between members of a controlled group, to the extent—

(A) The transaction or sale directly or indirectly benefits, or is intended to benefit, another member's long-term contract with a nonmember;

(B) The selling member is required under section 460 to determine any part of its gross income from the transaction or sale under the percentage-of-completion method (PCM); and

(C) The member with the long-term contract is required under section 460 to determine any part of its gross income from the long-term contract under the PCM.

(ii) *Definitions and nomenclature.* The definitions and nomenclature under §1.1502–13 and §1.267(f)–1 apply for purposes of this paragraph (j).

(2) *Example.* The following example illustrates the principles of paragraph (j)(1) of this section.

Example. Corporations P, S, and B file consolidated returns on a calendar-year basis. In 1996, B enters into a long-term contract with X, a nonmember, to manufacture 5 airplanes for $500 million, with delivery scheduled for 1999. Section 460 requires B to determine the gross income from its contract with X under the PCM. S enters into a contract with B to manufacture for $50 million the engines that B will install on X's airplanes. Section 460 requires S to determine the gross income from its contract with B under the PCM. S estimates that it will incur $40 million of total contract costs during 1997 and 1998 to manufacture the engines. S incurs $10 million of contract costs in 1997 and $30 million in 1998. Under paragraph (j) of this section, S determines its gross income from the long-term contract under the PCM rather than taking its income or loss into account under section 267(f) or §1.1502–13. Thus, S includes $12.5 million of gross receipts and $10 million of contract costs in gross income in 1997 and includes $37.5 million of gross receipts and $30 million of contract costs in gross income in 1998.

(3) *Effective dates*—(i) *In general.* This paragraph (j) applies with respect to transactions and sales occurring pursuant to contracts entered into in years beginning on or after July 12, 1995.

(ii) *Prior law.* For transactions and sales occurring pursuant to contracts entered into in years beginning before July 12, 1995, see the applicable regulations issued under sections 267(f) and 1502, including §§1.267(f)–1T, 1.267(f)–2T, and 1.1502–13(n) (as contained in the 26 CFR part 1 edition revised as of April 1, 1995).

(4) *Consent to change method of accounting.* For transactions and sales to which this paragraph (j) applies, the Commissioner's consent under section 446(e) is hereby granted to the extent any changes in method of accounting are necessary solely to comply with this section, provided the changes are made in the first taxable year of the taxpayer to which the rules of this paragraph (j) apply. Changes in method of accounting for these transactions are to be effected on a cut-off basis.

(k) *Mid-contract change in taxpayer*—(1) *In general.* The rules in this paragraph (k) apply if prior to the completion of a long-term contract accounted for using a long-term contract method by a taxpayer (old taxpayer), there is a transaction that makes another taxpayer (new taxpayer) responsible for accounting for income from the same contract. For purposes of this paragraph (k) and §1.460–6(g), an old taxpayer also includes any old taxpayer(s) (e.g., predecessors) of the old taxpayer. In addition, a change in status from taxable to tax exempt or from domestic to foreign, or vice versa, will be considered a change in taxpayer. Finally, a contract will be treated as the same contract if the terms of the contract are not substantially changed in connection with the transaction, whether or not the customer agrees to release the old taxpayer from any or all of its obligations under the contract. The rules governing constructive completion transactions are provided in paragraph (k)(2) of this section, while the rules governing step-in-the-shoes transactions are provided in paragraph (k)(3) of this section. Special rules related to the treatment of certain partnership transactions are reserved under paragraphs (k)(2)(iv) and (k)(3)(v) of this section. For application of the look-back method to mid-contract changes in taxpayers for contracts accounted for using the PCM, see §1.460–6(g).

(2) *Constructive completion transactions*—(i) *Scope.* The constructive completion rules in this paragraph (k)(2) apply to transactions (constructive completion transactions) that result in a change in the taxpayer responsible for reporting income from a contract and that are not described in paragraph (k)(3)(i) of this section. Constructive completion transactions generally include, for example, taxable sales under section 1001 and deemed asset sales under section 338.

(ii) *Old taxpayer.* The old taxpayer is treated as completing the contract on the date of the transaction. The total contract price (or, gross contract price in the case of a long-term contract accounted for under the CCM) for the old taxpayer is the sum of any amounts realized from the transaction that are allocable to the contract and any amounts the old taxpayer has received or reasonably expects to receive under the contract. Total contract price (or gross contract price) is reduced by any amount paid by the old taxpayer to the new taxpayer, and by any transaction costs, that are allocable to the contract. Thus, the old taxpayer's allocable contract costs determined under paragraph (b)(5) of this section do not include any consideration paid, or costs incurred, as a result of the transaction that are allocable to the contract. In the case of a transaction subject to section 338 or 1060, the amount realized from the transaction allocable to the contract is determined by using the residual method under §§1.338–6 and 1.338–7.

(iii) *New taxpayer.* The new taxpayer is treated as entering into a new contract on the date of the transaction. The new taxpayer must evaluate whether the new contract should be classified as a long-term contract within the meaning of §1.460–1(b) and account for the contract under a permissible method of accounting. For a new taxpayer who accounts for a contract using the PCM, the total contract price is any amount the new taxpayer reasonably expects to receive under the contract consistent with paragraph (b)(4) of this section. Total contract price is reduced by the amount of any consideration paid by the new taxpayer as a result of the transaction, and by any transaction costs, that are allocable to the contract and is increased by the amount of any consideration received by the new taxpayer as a result of the transaction that is allocable to the contract. Similarly, the gross contract price for a contract accounted for using the CCM is all amounts the new taxpayer is entitled by law or contract to receive consistent with paragraph (d)(3) of this section, adjusted for any consideration paid (or received) by the new taxpayer as a result of the transaction, and for any transaction costs, that are allocable to the contract. Thus, the new taxpayer's allocable contract costs determined under paragraph (b)(5) of this section do not include any consideration paid, or costs incurred, as a result of the transaction that are allocable to the contract. In the case of a transaction subject to sections 338 or 1060, the amount of consideration paid that is allocable to the contract is determined by using the residual method under §§1.338–6 and 1.338–7.

(iv) *Special rules relating to distributions of certain contracts by a partnership.* [Reserved]

(3) *Step-in-the-shoes transactions*—(i) *Scope.* The step-in-the-shoes rules in this paragraph (k)(3) apply to the following transactions that result in a change in the taxpayer responsible for reporting income from a contract accounted for using a long-term contract method of accounting (step-in-the-shoes transactions)—

(A) Transfers to which section 361 applies if the transfer is in connection with a reorganization described in section 368(a)(1)(A), (C) or (F);

(B) Transfers to which section 361 applies if the transfer is in connection with a reorganization described in section 368(a)(1)(D) or (G), provided the requirements of section 354(b)(1)(A) and (B) are met;

(C) Distributions to which section 332 applies, provided the contract is transferred to an 80-percent distributee;

(D) Transfers described in section 351;

(E) Transfers to which section 361 applies if the transfer is in connection with a reorganization described in section 368(a)(1)(D) with respect to which the requirements of section 355 (or so much of section 356 as relates to section 355) are met;

(F) Transfers (e.g., sales) of S corporation stock;

(G) Conversion to or from an S corporation;

(H) Members joining or leaving a consolidated group;

(I) Contributions to which section 721(a) applies;

(J) Transfers of partnership interests;

(K) Distributions to which section 731 applies (other than the distribution of the contract); and

(L) Any other transaction designated in the Internal Revenue Bulletin by the Internal Revenue Service. See §601.601(d)(2)(ii) of this chapter.

(ii) *Old taxpayer*—(A) *In general.* The new taxpayer will ''step into the shoes'' of the old taxpayer with respect to the contract. Thus, the old taxpayer's obligation to account for the contract terminates on the date of the transaction and is assumed by the new taxpayer, as set forth in paragraph (k)(3)(iii) of this section. As a result, an old taxpayer using the PCM is required to recognize income from the contract based on the cumulative allocable contract costs incurred as of the date of the transaction. Similarly, an old taxpayer using the CCM is not required to recognize any revenue and may not deduct allocable contract costs incurred with respect to the contract.

(B) *Gain realized on the transaction.* The amount of gain the old taxpayer realizes on the transfer of a contract in a step-in-the-shoes transaction must be determined after application of paragraph (k)(3)(ii)(A) of this section using the rules of paragraph (k)(2) of this section that apply to constructive completion transactions. (The amount of gain realized on a transfer of a contract is relevant, for example, in determining the amount of gain recognized with respect to the contract in a section 351 transaction in which the old taxpayer receives from the new taxpayer money or property other than stock of the transferee.)

(iii) *New taxpayer*—(A) *Method of accounting.* Beginning on the date of the transaction, the new taxpayer must account for the long-term contract by using the same method of accounting used by the old taxpayer prior to the transaction. The same method of accounting must be used for such contract regardless of whether the old taxpayer's method is the new taxpayer's principal method of accounting under §1.381(c)(4)–1(b)(3) or whether the new taxpayer is otherwise eligible to use the old taxpayer's method. Thus, if the old taxpayer uses the PCM to account for the contract, the new taxpayer steps into the shoes of the old taxpayer with respect to its completion factor and percentage of completion methods (such as the 10-percent method), even if the new taxpayer has not elected such methods for similarly classified contracts. Similarly, if the old taxpayer uses the CCM, the new taxpayer steps into the shoes of the old taxpayer with respect to the CCM, even if the new taxpayer is not otherwise eligible to use the CCM. However, the new taxpayer is not necessarily bound by the old taxpayer's method for similarly classified contracts entered into by the new taxpayer subsequent to the transaction and must apply general tax principles, including section 381, to determine the appropriate method to account for these subsequent contracts. To the extent that general tax principles allow the taxpayer to account for similarly classified contracts using a method other than the old taxpayer's method, the taxpayer is not required to obtain the consent of the Commissioner to begin using such other method.

(B) *Contract price.* In the case of a long-term contract that has been accounted for under PCM, the total contract price for the new taxpayer is the sum of any amounts the old taxpayer or the new taxpayer has received or reasonably expects to receive under the contract consistent with paragraph (b)(4) of this section. Similarly, the gross contract price in the case of a long-term contract accounted for under the CCM includes all amounts the old taxpayer or the new taxpayer is entitled by law or by contract to receive consistent with paragraph (d)(3) of this section.

(C) *Contract costs.* Total allocable contract costs for the new taxpayer are the allocable contract costs as defined under paragraph (b)(5) of this section incurred by either the old taxpayer prior to, or the new taxpayer after, the transaction. Thus, any payments between the old taxpayer and the new taxpayer with respect to the contract in connection with the transaction are not treated as allocable contract costs.

(iv) *Special rules related to certain corporate transactions*—(A) *Old taxpayer—basis adjustment*—(*1*) *In general.* Except as provided in paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*2*) of this section, in the case of a transaction described in paragraph (k)(3)(i)(D) or (E) of this section, the old taxpayer must adjust its basis in the stock of the new taxpayer by—

(*i*) Increasing such basis by the amount of gross receipts the old taxpayer has recognized under the contract; and

(*ii*) Reducing such basis by the amount of gross receipts the old taxpayer has received or reasonably expects to receive under the contract.

(*2*) *Basis adjustment in excess of stock basis.* If the old and new taxpayer do not join in the filing of a consolidated

Federal income tax return, the old taxpayer may not adjust its basis in the stock of the new taxpayer under paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*1*) of this section below zero and the old taxpayer must recognize ordinary income to the extent the basis in the stock of the new taxpayer otherwise would be adjusted below zero. If the old and new taxpayer join in the filing of a consolidated Federal income tax return, the old taxpayer must create an (or increase an existing) excess loss account to the extent the basis in the stock of the new taxpayer otherwise would be adjusted below zero under paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*1*) of this section. See §§ 1.1502–19 and 1.1502–32(a)(3)(ii).

(*3*) *Subsequent dispositions of certain contracts.* If the old taxpayer disposes of a contract in a transaction described in paragraph (k)(3)(i)(D) or (E) of this section that the old taxpayer acquired in a transaction described in paragraph (k)(3)(i)(D) or (E) of this section, the basis adjustment rule of this paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A) is applied by treating the old taxpayer as having recognized the amount of gross receipts recognized by the previous old taxpayer under the contract and any amount recognized by the previous old taxpayer with respect to the contract in connection with the transaction in which the old taxpayer acquired the contract. In addition, the old taxpayer is treated as having received or as reasonably expecting to receive under the contract any amount the previous old taxpayer received or reasonably expects to receive under the contract. Similar principles will apply in the case of multiple successive transfers described in paragraph (k)(3)(i)(D) or (E) of this section involving the contract.

(B) *New Taxpayer*—(1) *Contract price adjustment.* Generally, payments between the old taxpayer and the new taxpayer with respect to the contract in connection with the transaction do not affect the contract price. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence and paragraph (k)(3)(iii)(B) of this section, however, in the case of transactions described in paragraph (k)(3)(i)(B), (D) or (E) of this section, the total contract price (or gross contract price) must be reduced to the extent of any amount recognized by the old taxpayer with respect to the contract in connection with the transaction (e.g., any amount recognized under section 351(b) or 357 that is attributable to the contract and any income recognized by the old taxpayer pursuant to the basis adjustment rule of paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)).

(*2*) *Basis in Contract.* The new taxpayer's basis in a contract (including the uncompleted property, if applicable) acquired in a transaction described in paragraphs (k)(3)(i)(A) through (E) of this section will be computed under section 362 or section 334, as applicable. Upon a new taxpayer's completion (actual or constructive) of a CCM or a PCM contract acquired in a transaction described in paragraphs (k)(3)(i)(A) through (E) of this section, the new taxpayer's basis in the contract (including the uncompleted property, if applicable) is reduced to zero. The new taxpayer is not entitled to a deduction or loss in connection with any basis reduction pursuant to this paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(B)(*2*).

(v) *Special rules related to certain partnership transactions.* [Reserved]

(4) *Anti-abuse rule.* Notwithstanding this paragraph (k), in the case of a transaction entered into with a principal purpose of shifting the tax consequences associated with a long-term contract in a manner that substantially reduces the aggregate U.S. Federal income tax liability of the parties with respect to that contract, the Commissioner may allocate to the old (or new) taxpayer the income from that contract properly allocable to the old (or new) taxpayer. For example, the Commissioner may reallocate income from a long-term contract in a transaction in which a contract accounted for using the CCM, or using the PCM where the old taxpayer has received advance payments in excess of its contribution to the contract, is transferred to a tax indifferent party (e.g., a foreign person not subject to U.S. Federal income tax).

(5) *Examples.* The following examples illustrate the rules of this paragraph (k). For purposes of these examples, it is assumed that the contract is a long-term construction contract accounted for using the PCM prior to the transaction unless stated otherwise and the

contract is not transferred with a principal purpose of shifting the tax consequences associated with a long-term contract in a manner that substantially reduces the aggregate U.S. Federal income tax liability of the parties with respect to that contract. The examples are as follows:

Example 1. Constructive completion—PCM—(i) *Facts.* In Year 1, X enters into a contract. The total contract price is $1,000,000 and the estimated total allocable contract costs are $800,000. In Year 1, X incurs costs of $200,000. In Year 2, X incurs additional costs of $400,000 before selling the contract as part of a taxable sale of its business in Year 2 to Y, an unrelated party. At the time of sale, X has received $650,000 in progress payments under the contract. The consideration allocable to the contract under section 1060 is $150,000. Pursuant to the sale, the new taxpayer Y immediately assumes X's contract obligations and rights. Y is required to account for the contract using the PCM. In Year 2, Y incurs additional allocable contract costs of $50,000. Y correctly estimates at the end of Year 2 that it will have to incur an additional $75,000 of allocable contract costs in Year 3 to complete the contract.

(ii) *Old taxpayer.* For Year 1, X reports receipts of $250,000 (the completion factor multiplied by total contract price ($200,000/$800,000×$1,000,000)) and costs of $200,000, for a profit of $50,000. X is treated as completing the contract in Year 2 because it sold the contract. For purposes of applying the PCM in Year 2, the total contract price is $800,000 (the sum of the amounts received under the contract and the amount realized in the sale ($650,000 + $150,000)) and the total allocable contract costs are $600,000 (the sum of the costs incurred in Year 1 and Year 2 ($200,000 + $400,000)). Thus, in Year 2, X reports receipts of $550,000 (total contract price minus receipts already reported ($800,000 − $250,000)) and costs incurred in year 2 of $400,000, for a profit of $150,000.

(iii) *New taxpayer.* Y is treated as entering into a new contract in Year 2. The total contract price is $200,000 (the amount remaining to be paid under the terms of the contract less the consideration paid allocable to the contract ($1,000,000 − $650,000 − $150,000)). The estimated total allocable contract costs at the end of Year 2 are $125,000 (the allocable contract costs that Y reasonably expects to incur to complete the contract ($50,000 + $75,000)). In Year 2, Y reports receipts of $80,000 (the completion factor multiplied by the total contract price [($50,000/$125,000)×$200,000] and costs of $50,000 (the costs incurred after the purchase), for a profit of $30,000. For Year 3, Y reports receipts of $120,000 (total contract price minus receipts already reported ($200,000 − $80,000)) and costs of $75,000, for a profit of $45,000.

Example 2. Constructive completion—CCM—(i) *Facts.* The facts are the same as in Example 1, except that X and Y properly account for the contract under the CCM.

(ii) *Old taxpayer.* X does not report any income or costs from the contract in Year 1. In Year 2, the contract is deemed complete for X, and X reports its gross contract price of $800,000 (the sum of the amounts received under the contract and the amount realized in the sale ($650,000 + $150,000)) and its total allocable contract costs of $600,000 (the sum of the costs incurred in Year 1 and Year 2 ($200,000 + $400,000)) in that year, for a profit of $200,000.

(iii) *New taxpayer.* Y is treated as entering into a new contract in Year 2. Under the CCM, Y reports no gross receipts or costs in Year 2. Y reports its gross contract price of $200,000 (the amount remaining to be paid under the terms of the contract less the consideration paid allocable to the contract ($1,000,000 − $650,000 − $150,000)) and its total allocable contract costs of $125,000 (the allocable contract costs that Y incurred to complete the contract ($50,000 + $75,000)) in Year 3, the completion year, for a profit of $75,000.

Example 3. Step-in-the-shoes—PCM—(i) *Facts.* The facts are the same as in Example 1, except that X transfers the contract (including the uncompleted property) to Y in exchange for stock of Y in a transaction that qualifies as a statutory merger described in section 368(a)(1)(A) and does not result in gain or loss to X under section 361(a).

(ii) *Old taxpayer.* For Year 1, X reports receipts of $250,000 (the completion factor multiplied by total contract price ($200,000/$800,000×$1,000,000)) and costs of $200,000, for a profit of $50,000. Because the mid-contract change in taxpayer results from a transaction described in paragraph (k)(3)(i) of this section, X is not treated as completing the contract in Year 2. In Year 2, X reports receipts of $500,000 (the completion factor multiplied by the total contract price and minus the Year 1 gross receipts [($600,000/$800,000×$1,000,000)–$250,000]) and costs of $400,000, for a profit of $100,000.

(iii) *New taxpayer.* Because the mid-contract change in taxpayer results from a step-in-the-shoes transaction, Y must account for the contract using the same methods of accounting used by X prior to the transaction. Total contract price is the sum of any amounts that X and Y have received or reasonably expect to receive under the contract, and total allocable contract costs are the allocable contract costs of X and Y. Thus, the estimated total allocable contract costs at the end of Year 2 are $725,000 (the cumulative allocable contract costs of X and the estimated total allocable contract costs of Y ($200,000 + $400,000 + $50,000 + $75,000)). In Year 2, Y reports receipts of $146,552 (the completion factor multiplied by the total contract price minus receipts reported by the old taxpayer ([($650,000/$725,000)×$1,000,000]–$750,000) and costs of $50,000, for a profit of $96,552. For Year 3, Y reports receipts of $103,448 (the total contract price minus prior year receipts ($1,000,000–$896,552)) and costs of $75,000, for a profit of $28,448.

Example 4. Step-in-the-shoes—CCM—(i) *Facts*. The facts are the same as in *Example 3*, except that X properly accounts for the contract under the CCM.

(ii) *Old taxpayer*. X reports no income or costs from the contract in Years 1, 2 or 3.

(iii) *New taxpayer*. Because the mid-contract change in taxpayer results from a step-in-the-shoes transaction, Y must account for the contract using the same method of accounting used by X prior to the transaction. Thus, in Year 3, the completion year, Y reports receipts of $1,000,000 and total contract costs of $725,000, for a profit of $275,000.

Example 5. Step in the shoes—PCM—basis adjustment. The facts are the same as in Example 3, except that X transfers the contract (including the uncompleted property) with a basis of $0 and $125,000 of cash to a new corporation, Z, in exchange for all of the stock of Z in a section 351 transaction. Thus, under section 358(a), X's basis in the Z stock is $125,000. Pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*1*) of this section, X must increase its basis in the Z stock by the amount of gross receipts X recognized under the contract, $750,000 ($250,000 receipts in Year 1 + $500,000 receipts in Year 2), and reduce its basis by the amount of gross receipts X received under the contract, the $650,000 in progress payments. Accordingly, X's basis in the Z stock is $225,000. All other results are the same.

Example 6. Step in the shoes—CCM—basis adjustment—(i) *Facts*. The facts are the same as in *Example 4*, except that X receives progress payments of $800,000 (rather than $650,000) and transfers the contract (including the uncompleted property) with a basis of $600,000 and $125,000 of cash to a new corporation, Z, in exchange for all of the stock of Z in a section 351 transaction. X and Z do not join in filing a consolidated Federal income tax return.

(ii) *Old taxpayer*. X reports no income or costs under the contract in Years 1, 2, or 3. Under section 358(a), X's basis in Z is $725,000. Pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*1*), X must reduce its basis in the stock of Z by $800,000, the progress payments received by X. However, X may not reduce its basis in the Z stock below zero pursuant paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*2*) of this section. Accordingly, X's basis in the Z stock is reduced by $725,000 to zero and X must recognize ordinary income of $75,000.

(iii) *New taxpayer*. Upon completion of the contract in Year 3, Z reports gross receipts of $925,000 ($1,000,000 original contract price—$75,000 income recognized by the old taxpayer pursuant to the basis adjustment rule of paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)) and total contract costs of $725,000, for a profit of $200,000.

Example 7. Step in the shoes—PCM—gain recognized in transaction—(i) *Facts*. The facts are the same as in *Example 3*, except that X transfers the contract (including the uncompleted property) with a basis of $0 and an unrelated capital asset with a value of $100,000 and a basis of $0 to a new corporation, Z, in exchange for stock of Z with a value of $200,000 and $50,000 of cash in a section 351 transaction.

(ii) *Old taxpayer*. For year 1, X reports receipts of $250,000 ($200,000/$800,000×$1,000,000) and costs of $200,000, for a profit of $50,000. X is not treated as completing the contract in Year 2. In Year 2, X reports receipts of $500,000 (($600,000/$800,000×$1,000,000 = $750,000 cumulative gross receipts)—$250,000 prior year cumulative gross receipts) and costs of $400,000, for a profit of $100,000. Under paragraph (k)(3)(ii)(B) of this section, X determines that the gain realized on the transfer of the contract to Z under the constructive completion rules of paragraph (k)(2)(ii) of this section is $50,000 (total contract price of $800,000 ($150,000 value allocable to the contract + $650,000 progress payments)—$750,000 previously recognized cumulative gross receipts—$0 costs incurred but not recognized). The gain realized on the transfer of the unrelated capital asset to Z is $100,000. The amount of gain X must recognize due to the receipt of $50,000 cash in the exchange is $50,000, of which $30,000 is allocated to the contract ($150,000 value of contract/$250,000 total value of property transferred to Z × $50,000) and is treated as ordinary income, and $20,000 is allocated to the unrelated capital asset ($100,000 value of capital asset/$250,000 total value of property transferred to Z × $50,000). Under section 358(a), X's basis in the Z stock is $0. However, pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*1*) of this section, X must increase its basis in the Z stock by $750,000, the amount of gross receipts recognized under the contract, and must reduce its basis in the Z stock by $650,000, the amount of gross receipts X received under the contract. Therefore, X's basis in the Z stock is $100,000.

(iii) *New taxpayer*. Z must account for the contract using the same PCM method used by X prior to the transaction. Pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(B)(1) of this section, the total contract price is $970,000 ($1,000,000 amount X and Z have received or reasonably expect to receive under the contract—$30,000 income recognized by X with respect to the contract as a result of the receipt of $50,000 cash in the transaction). In Year 2, Z reports gross receipts of $119,655 ($650,000/$725,000×$970,000 = $869,655 current year cumulative gross receipts—$750,000 cumulative gross receipts reported by the old taxpayer) and costs of $50,000, for a profit of $69,655. In Year 3, Z reports gross receipts of $100,345 ($970,000–$869,655) and costs of $75,000, for a profit of $25,345.

Example 8. Step in the shoes—CCM—gain recognized in transaction—(i) *Facts.* The facts are the same as in *Example 4*, except that X transfers the contract (including the uncompleted property) with a basis of $600,000 and an unrelated capital asset with a value of $125,000 and a basis of $0 to a new corporation, Z, in exchange for all the stock of Z with a value of $175,000 and $100,000 of cash in a section 351 transaction. X and Z do not join in filing a consolidated Federal income tax return.

(ii) *Old taxpayer.* X reports no income or costs under the contract in Years 1, 2, or 3. Under paragraph (k)(3)(ii)(B), X determines that the gain realized on the transfer of the contract to Z under the constructive completion rules of paragraph (k)(2)(ii) of this section is $200,000 ($800,000 total contract price ($150,000 value allocable to the contract + $650,000 progress payments)—$600,000 costs incurred but not recognized). The gain realized on the transfer of the unrelated capital asset to Z is $125,000. The amount of gain X must recognize due to the receipt of $100,000 of cash in the exchange is $100,000, of which $54,545 is allocated to the contract ($150,000 value of the contract/$275,000 total value of property transferred to Z×$100,000) and is treated as ordinary income, and $45,455 is allocated to the unrelated capital asset ($125,000 value of capital asset/$275,000 total value of property transferred to Z×$100,000). Under section 358(a), X's basis in the Z stock is $600,000 ($600,000 basis in the contract and unrelated capital asset transferred—$100,000 cash received + $100,000 gain recognized). Pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*1*) of this section, X must reduce its basis in the stock of Z by $650,000, the progress payments received under the contract. However, X may not reduce its basis in the Z stock below zero pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)(*2*) of this section. Accordingly, X's basis in the Z stock is reduced by $600,000 to zero and X must recognize income of $50,000.

(iii) *New taxpayer.* Z must account for the contract using the same CCM used by X prior to the transaction. Pursuant to paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(B)(1) of this section, the total contract price is $895,455 ($1,000,000 original contract price—$54,545 income recognized by old taxpayer with respect to the contract as a result of the receipt of cash in the transaction—$50,000 income recognized by the old taxpayer pursuant to the basis adjustment rule of paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(A)). Accordingly, upon completion of the contract in Year 3, Z reports gross receipts of $895,455 and total contract costs of $725,000, for a profit of $170,455.

(6) *Effective date.* This paragraph (k) is applicable for transactions on or after May 15, 2002. Application of the rules of this paragraph (k) to a transaction that occurs on or after May 15, 2002 is not a change in method of accounting.

[T.D. 8597, 60 FR 36684, July 18, 1995, as amended by T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2232, Jan. 11, 2001; 66 FR 18191, Apr. 6, 2001; T.D 8995, 67 FR 34605, May 15, 2002]

§ 1.460–5 Cost allocation rules.

(a) *Overview.* This section prescribes methods of allocating costs to long-term contracts accounted for using the percentage-of-completion method described in §1.460–4(b) (PCM), the completed-contract method described in §1.460–4(d) (CCM), or the percentage-of-completion/capitalized-cost method described in §1.460–4(e) (PCCM). Exempt construction contracts described in §1.460–3(b) accounted for using a method other than the PCM or CCM are not subject to the cost allocation rules of this section (other than the requirement to allocate production-period interest under paragraph (b)(2)(v) of this section). Paragraph (b) of this section describes the regular cost allocation methods for contracts subject to the PCM. Paragraph (c) of this section describes an elective simplified cost allocation method for contracts subject to the PCM. Paragraph (d) of this section describes the cost allocation methods for exempt construction contracts reported using the CCM. Paragraph (e) of this section describes the cost allocation rules for contracts subject to the PCCM. Paragraph (f) of this section describes additional rules applicable to the cost allocation methods described in this section. Paragraph (g) of this section provides rules concerning consistency in method of allocating costs to long-term contracts.

(b) *Cost allocation method for contracts subject to PCM*—(1) *In general.* Except as otherwise provided in paragraph (b)(2) of this section, a taxpayer must allocate costs to each long-term contract subject to the PCM in the same manner that direct and indirect costs are capitalized to property produced by a taxpayer under §1.263A–1(e) through (h). Thus, a taxpayer must allocate to each long-term contract subject to the PCM all direct costs and certain indirect costs properly allocable to the long-term contract (*i.e.*, all costs that directly benefit or are incurred by reason of the performance of the long-term contract). However, see paragraph (c) of this section concerning an election to allocate contract costs using the simplified cost-to-cost method. As in section 263A, the use of the practical capacity concept is not permitted. See §1.263A–2(a)(4).

(2) *Special rules*—(i) *Direct material costs.* The costs of direct materials must be allocated to a long-term contract when dedicated to the contract under principles similar to those in §1.263A–11(b)(2). Thus, a taxpayer dedicates direct materials by associating them with a specific contract, including by purchase order, entry on books and records, or shipping instructions. A taxpayer maintaining inventories under §1.471–1 must determine allocable contract costs attributable to direct materials using its method of accounting for those inventories (*e.g.*, FIFO, LIFO, specific identification).

(ii) *Components and subassemblies.* The costs of a component or subassembly (component) produced by the taxpayer must be allocated to a long-term contract as the taxpayer incurs costs to produce the component if the taxpayer reasonably expects to incorporate the component into the subject matter of the contract. Similarly, the cost of a purchased component (including a component purchased from a related party) must be allocated to a long-term contract as the taxpayer incurs the cost to purchase the component if the taxpayer reasonably expects to incorporate the component into the subject matter of the contract. In all other cases, the cost of a component must be allocated to a long-term contract when the component is dedicated, under principles similar to those in §1.263A–11(b)(2). A taxpayer maintaining inventories under §1.471–1 must determine allocable contract costs attributable to components using its method of accounting for those inventories (*e.g.*, FIFO, LIFO, specific identification).

(iii) *Simplified production methods.* A taxpayer may not determine allocable contract costs using the simplified production methods described in §1.263A–2(b) and (c).

(iv) *Costs identified under cost-plus long-term contracts and federal long-term contracts.* To the extent not otherwise allocated to the contract under this paragraph (b), a taxpayer must allocate any identified costs to a cost-plus long-term contract or federal long-term contract (as defined in section 460(d)). *Identified cost* means any cost, including a charge representing the time-value of money, identified by the taxpayer or related person as being attributable to the taxpayer's cost-plus long-term contract or federal long-term contract under the terms of the contract itself or under federal, state, or local law or regulation.

(v) *Interest*—(A) *In general.* If property produced under a long-term contract is *designated property*, as defined in §1.263A–8(b) (without regard to the exclusion for long-term contracts under §1.263A–8(d)(2)(v)), a taxpayer must allocate interest incurred during the production period to the long-term contract in the same manner as interest is allocated to property produced by a taxpayer under section 263A(f). See §§1.263A–8 to 1.263A–12 generally.

(B) *Production period.* Notwithstanding §1.263A–12(c) and (d), for purposes of this paragraph (b)(2)(v), the production period of a long-term contract—

(*1*) Begins on the later of—

(*i*) The contract commencement date, as defined in §1.460–1(b)(7); or

(*ii*) For a taxpayer using the accrual method of accounting for long-term contracts, the date by which 5 percent or more of the total estimated costs, including design and planning costs, under the contract have been incurred; and

(*2*) Ends on the date that the contract is completed, as defined in §1.460–1(c)(3).

(C) *Application of section 263A(f).* For purposes of this paragraph (b)(2)(v), section 263A(f)(1)(B)(iii) (regarding an estimated production period exceeding 1 year and a cost exceeding $1,000,000) must be applied on a contract-by-contract basis; except that, in the case of a taxpayer using an accrual method of accounting, that section must be applied on a property-by-property basis.

(vi) *Research and experimental expenses.* Notwithstanding §1.263A–1(e)(3)(ii)(P) and (iii)(B), a taxpayer must allocate research and experimental expenses, other than independent research and development expenses (as defined in §1.460–1(b)(9)), to its long-term contracts.

(vii) *Service costs*—(A) *Simplified service cost method*—(*1*) *In general.* To use the simplified service cost method under §1.263A–1(h), a taxpayer must allocate the otherwise capitalizable mixed service costs among its long-term contracts using a reasonable method. For example, otherwise capitalizable mixed service costs may be allocated to each long-term contract based on labor hours or contract costs allocable to the contract. To be considered reasonable, an allocation method must be applied consistently and must not disproportionately allocate service costs to contracts expected to be completed in the near future.

(*2*) *Example.* The following example illustrates the rule of this paragraph (b)(2)(vii)(A):

Example. Simplified service cost method. During 2001, C, whose taxable year ends December 31, produces electronic equipment for inventory and enters into long-term contracts to manufacture specialized electronic equipment. C's method of allocating mixed service costs to the property it produces is the labor-based, simplified service cost method described in §1.263A–1(h)(4). For 2001, C's total mixed service costs are $100,000, C's section 263A labor costs are $500,000, C's section 460 labor costs (*i.e.*, labor costs allocable to C's long-term contracts) are $250,000, and C's total labor costs are $1,000,000. To determine the amount of mixed service costs capitalizable under section 263A for 2001, C multiplies its total mixed service costs by its section 263A allocation ratio (section 263A labor costs ÷ total labor costs). Thus, C's capitalizable mixed service costs for 2001 are $50,000 ($100,000×$500,000÷$1,000,000). Thereafter, C allocates its capitalizable mixed service costs to produced property remaining in ending inventory using its 263A allocation method (*e.g.*, burden rate, simplified production). Similarly, to determine the amount of mixed service costs that are allocable to C's long-term contracts for 2001, C multiplies its total mixed service costs by its section 460 allocation ratio (section 460 labor ÷ total labor costs). Thus, C's allocable mixed service contract costs for 2001 are $25,000 ($100,000×$250,000÷$1,000,000). Thereafter, C allocates its allocable mixed service costs to its long-term contracts proportionately based on its section 460 labor costs allocable to each long-term contract.

(B) *Jobsite costs.* If an administrative, service, or support function is performed solely at the jobsite for a specific long-term contract, the taxpayer may allocate all the direct and indirect costs of that administrative, service, or support function to that long-term contract. Similarly, if an administrative, service, or support function is performed at the jobsite solely for the taxpayer's long-term contract activities, the taxpayer may allocate all the direct and indirect costs of that administrative, service, or support function among all the long-term contracts performed at that jobsite. For this purpose, jobsite means a production plant or a construction site.

(C) *Limitation on other reasonable cost allocation methods.* A taxpayer may use any other reasonable method of allocating service costs, as provided in §1.263A–1(f)(4), if, for the taxpayer's long-term contracts considered as a whole, the—

(*1*) Total amount of service costs allocated to the contracts does not differ significantly from the total amount of service costs that would have been allocated to the contracts under §1.263A–1(f)(2) or (3);

(*2*) Service costs are not allocated disproportionately to contracts expected to be completed in the near future because of the taxpayer's cost allocation method; and

(*3*) Taxpayer's cost allocation method is applied consistently.

(c) *Simplified cost-to-cost method for contracts subject to the PCM*—(1) *In general.* Instead of using the cost allocation method prescribed in paragraph (b) of this section, a taxpayer may elect to use the simplified cost-to-cost method, which is authorized under section 460(b)(3)(A), to allocate costs to a long-term contract subject to the PCM. Under the simplified cost-to-cost method, a taxpayer determines a contract's completion factor based upon only direct material costs; direct labor costs; and depreciation, amortization, and cost recovery allowances on equipment and facilities directly used to manufacture or construct the subject matter of the contract. For this purpose, the costs associated with any manufacturing or construction activities performed by a subcontractor are considered either direct material or direct labor costs, as appropriate, and therefore must be allocated to the contract under the simplified cost-to-cost method. An electing taxpayer must use the simplified cost-to-cost method to apply the look-back method under §1.460–6 and to determine alternative minimum taxable income under §1.460–4(f).

(2) *Election.* A taxpayer makes an election under this paragraph (c) by using the simplified cost-to-cost method for all long-term contracts entered into during the taxable year of the election on its original federal income tax return for the election year. This election is a method of accounting and, thus, applies to all long-term contracts entered into during and after the taxable year of the election. This election is not available if a taxpayer does not use the PCM to account for all long-term contracts or if a taxpayer elects to use the 10-percent method described in §1.460–4(b)(6).

(d) *Cost allocation rules for exempt construction contracts reported using the CCM*—(1) *In general.* For exempt construction contracts reported using the CCM, other than contracts described in paragraph (d)(3) of this section (concerning contracts of homebuilders that do not satisfy the $10,000,000 gross receipts test described in §1.460–3(b)(3) or will not be completed within two years of the contract commencement date), a taxpayer must annually allocate the cost of any activity that is incident to or necessary for the taxpayer's performance under a long-term contract. A taxpayer must allocate to each exempt construction contract all direct costs as defined in §1.263A–1(e)(2)(i) and all indirect costs either as provided in §1.263A–1(e)(3) or as provided in paragraph (d)(2) of this section.

(2) *Indirect costs*—(i) *Indirect costs allocable to exempt construction contracts.* A taxpayer allocating costs under this paragraph (d)(2) must allocate the following costs to an exempt construction contract, other than a contract described in paragraph (d)(3) of this section, to the extent incurred in the performance of that contract—

(A) Repair of equipment or facilities;

(B) Maintenance of equipment or facilities;

(C) Utilities, such as heat, light, and power, allocable to equipment or facilities;

(D) Rent of equipment or facilities;

(E) Indirect labor and contract supervisory wages, including basic compensation, overtime pay, vacation and holiday pay, sick leave pay (other than payments pursuant to a wage continuation plan under section 105(d) as it existed prior to its repeal in 1983), shift differential, payroll taxes, and contributions to a supplemental unemployment benefits plan;

(F) Indirect materials and supplies;

(G) Noncapitalized tools and equipment;

(H) Quality control and inspection;

(I) Taxes otherwise allowable as a deduction under section 164, other than state, local, and foreign income taxes, to the extent attributable to labor, materials, supplies, equipment, or facilities;

(J) Depreciation, amortization, and cost-recovery allowances reported for the taxable year for financial purposes on equipment and facilities to the extent allowable as deductions under chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code;

(K) Cost depletion;

(L) Administrative costs other than the cost of selling or any return on capital;

(M) Compensation paid to officers other than for incidental or occasional services;

(N) Insurance, such as liability insurance on machinery and equipment; and

(O) Interest, as required under paragraph (b)(2)(v) of this section.

(ii) *Indirect costs not allocable to exempt construction contracts.* A taxpayer allocating costs under this paragraph (d)(2) is not required to allocate the following costs to an exempt construction contract reported using the CCM—

(A) Marketing and selling expenses, including bidding expenses;

(B) Advertising expenses;

(C) Other distribution expenses;

(D) General and administrative expenses attributable to the performance of services that benefit the taxpayer's activities as a whole (*e.g.*, payroll expenses, legal and accounting expenses);

(E) Research and experimental expenses (described in section 174 and the regulations thereunder);

(F) Losses under section 165 and the regulations thereunder;

(G) Percentage of depletion in excess of cost depletion;

(H) Depreciation, amortization, and cost recovery allowances on equipment and facilities that have been placed in service but are temporarily idle (for this purpose, an asset is not considered to be temporarily idle on non-working days, and an asset used in construction is considered to be idle when it is neither en route to nor located at a jobsite), and depreciation, amortization and cost recovery allowances under chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code in excess of depreciation, amortization, and cost recovery allowances reported by the taxpayer in the taxpayer's financial reports;

(I) Income taxes attributable to income received from long-term contracts;

(J) Contributions paid to or under a stock bonus, pension, profit-sharing, or annuity plan or other plan deferring the receipt of compensation whether or not the plan qualifies under section 401(a), and other employee benefit expenses paid or accrued on behalf of labor, to the extent the contributions or expenses are otherwise allowable as deductions under chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code. Other employee benefit expenses include (but are not limited to): Worker's compensation; amounts deductible or for whose payment reduction in earnings and profits is allowed under section 404A and the regulations thereunder; payments pursuant to a wage continuation plan under section 105(d) as it existed prior to its repeal in 1983; amounts includible in the gross income of employees under a method or arrangement of employer contributions or compensation which has the effect of a stock bonus, pension, profit-sharing, or annuity plan, or other plan deferring the receipt of compensation or providing deferred benefits; premiums on life and health insurance; and miscellaneous benefits provided for employees such as safety, medical treatment, recreational and eating facilities, membership dues, *etc.*;

(K) Cost attributable to strikes, rework labor, scrap and spoilage; and

(L) Compensation paid to officers attributable to the performance of services that benefit the taxpayer's activities as a whole.

(3) *Large homebuilders.* A taxpayer must capitalize the costs of home construction contracts under section 263A and the regulations thereunder, unless the contract will be completed within two years of the contract commencement date and the taxpayer satisfies the $10,000,000 gross receipts test described in §1.460–3(b)(3).

(e) *Cost allocation rules for contracts subject to the PCCM.* A taxpayer must use the cost allocation rules described in paragraph (b) of this section to determine the costs allocable to the entire qualified ship contract or residential construction contract accounted for using the PCCM and may not use the simplified cost-to-cost method described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) *Special rules applicable to costs allocated under this section*—(1) *Nondeductible costs.* A taxpayer may not allocate any otherwise allocable contract cost to a long-term contract if any section of the Internal Revenue Code disallows a deduction for that type of payment or expenditure (*e.g.*, an illegal bribe described in section 162(c)).

(2) *Costs incurred for non-long-term contract activities.* If a taxpayer performs a non-long-term contract activity, as defined in §1.460–1(d)(2), that is incident to or necessary for the manufacture, building, installation, or construction of the subject matter of one or more of the taxpayer's long-term contracts, the taxpayer must allocate the costs attributable to that activity to such contract(s).

(g) *Method of accounting.* A taxpayer that adopts or elects a cost allocation method of accounting (or changes to another cost allocation method of accounting with the Commissioner's consent) must apply that method consistently for all similarly classified contracts, until the taxpayer obtains the Commissioner's consent under section 446(e) to change to another cost allocation method. A taxpayer-initiated change in cost allocation method will be permitted only on a cut-off basis (*i.e.*, for contracts entered into on or after the year of change) and thus, a section 481(a) adjustment will not be permitted or required.

[T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2237, Jan. 11, 2001]

§ 1.460–6 Look-back method.

(a) *In general*—(1) *Introduction*. With respect to income from any long-term contract reported under the percentage of completion method, a taxpayer is required to pay or is entitled to receive interest under section 460(b) on the amount of tax liability that is deferred or accelerated as a result of overestimating or underestimating total contract price or contract costs. Under this look-back method, taxpayers are required to pay interest for any deferral of tax liability resulting from the underestimation of the total contract price or the overestimation of total contract costs. Conversely, if the total contract price is overestimated or the total contract costs are underestimated, taxpayers are entitled to receive interest for any resulting acceleration of tax liability. The computation of the amount of deferred or accelerated tax liability under the look-back method is hypothetical; application of the look-back method does not result in an adjustment to the taxpayer's tax liability as originally reported, as reported on an amended return, or as adjusted on examination. Thus, the look-back method does not correct for differences in tax liability that result from over- or under-estimation of contract price and costs and that are permanent because, for example, tax rates change during the term of the contract.

(2) *Overview*. Paragraph (b) explains which situations require application of the look-back method to income from a long-term contract. Paragraph (c) explains the operation of the three computational steps for applying the look-back method. Paragraph (d) provides guidance concerning the simplified marginal impact method. Paragraph (e) provides an elective method to minimize the number of times the look-back method must be reapplied to a single long-term contract. Paragraph (f) describes the reporting requirements for the look-back method and the tax treatment of look-back interest. Paragraph (g) provides rules for applying the look-back method when there is a transaction that changes the taxpayer that reports income from a long-term contract prior to the completion of a contract. Paragraph (h) provides examples illustrating the three computational steps for applying the look-back method. Paragraph (j) of this section provides guidance concerning the election not to apply the look-back method in de minimis cases.

(b) *Scope of look-back method*—(1) *In general*. The look-back method applies to any income from a long-term contract within the meaning of section 460(f) that is required to be reported under the percentage of completion method (as modified by section 460) for regular income tax purposes or for alternative minimum tax purposes. If a taxpayer uses the percentage of completion-capitalized cost method for long-term contracts, the look-back method applies for regular tax purposes only to the portion (40, 70, or 90 percent, whichever applies) of the income from the contract that is reported under the percentage of completion method. To the extent that the percentage-of-completion method is required to be used under §1.460–1(g) with respect to income and expenses that are attributable to activities that benefit a related party's long-term contract, the look-back method also applies to these amounts, even if those activities are not performed under a contract entered into directly by the taxpayer.

(2) *Exceptions from section 460*. The look-back method generally does not apply to the regular taxable income from any long-term construction contract within the meaning of section 460(e)(4) that:

(i) Is a home construction contract within the meaning of section 460(e)(1)(A), or

(ii) Is not a home construction contract but is estimated to be completed within a 2-year period by a taxpayer whose average annual gross receipts for the 3 tax years preceding the tax year the contract is entered into do not exceed $10,000,000 (as provided in section 460(e)(1)(B)). These contracts are not subject to the look-back method for regular tax purposes, even if the taxpayer uses a version of the percentage of completion method permitted under §1.451–3, unless the taxpayer has properly changed its method of accounting for these contracts to the percentage of completion method as modified by section 460(b). The look-back method, however, applies to the alternative minimum taxable income from a contract of this type, unless it is exempt from the required use of the percentage of completion method under section 56(a)(3).

(3) *De minimis exception.* Notwithstanding that the percentage of completion method is otherwise required to be used, the look-back method does not apply to any long-term contract that:

(i) Is completed within 2 years of the contract commencement date, and

(ii) Has a gross contract price (as of the completion of the contract) that does not exceed the lesser of $1,000,000 or 1 percent of the average annual gross receipts of the taxpayer for the 3 tax years preceding the tax year in which the contract is completed.

This de minimis exception is mandatory and, therefore, precludes application of the look-back method to any contract that meets the requirements of the exception. The de minimis exception applies for purposes of computing both regular taxable income and alternative minimum taxable income. Solely for this purpose, the determination of whether a long-term contract meets the gross receipts test for both alternative minimum tax and regular tax purposes is made based only on the taxpayer's regular taxable income.

(4) *Alternative minimum tax.* For purposes of computing alternative minimum taxable income, section 56(a)(3) generally requires long-term contracts within the meaning of section 460(f) (generally without regard to the exceptions in section 460(e)) to be accounted for using only the percentage of completion method as defined in section 460(b), including the look-back method of section 460(b), with respect to tax years beginning after December 31, 1986. However, section 56(a)(3) (and thus the look-back method) does not apply to any long-term contract entered into after June 20, 1988, and before the beginning of the first tax year that begins after September 30, 1990, that meets the conditions of both section 460(e)(1)(A) and clauses (i) and (ii) of section 460(e)(1)(B), and does not apply to any long-term contract entered into in a tax year that begins after September 30, 1990, that meets the conditions of section 460(e)(1)(A). A taxpayer that applies the percentage of completion method (and thus the look-back method) to income from a long-term contract only for purposes of determining alternative minimum taxable income, and not regular taxable income, must apply the look-back method to the alternative minimum taxable income in the year of contract completion and other filing years whether or not the taxpayer was liable for the alternative minimum tax for the filing year or for any prior year. Interest is computed under the look-back method to the extent that the taxpayer's total tax liability (including the alternative minimum tax liability) would have differed if the percentage of completion method had been applied using actual, rather than estimated, contract price and contract costs.

(5) *Effective date.* The look-back method, including the de minimis exception, applies to long-term contracts entered into after February 28, 1986. With respect to activities that are subject to section 460 solely because they benefit a long-term contract of a related party, the look-back method generally applies only if the related party's long-term contract was entered into after June 20, 1988, unless a principal purpose of the related-party arrangement is to avoid the requirements of section 460.

(c) *Operation of the look-back method*—(1) *Overview*—(i) *In general.* The amount of interest charged or credited to a taxpayer under the look-back method is computed in three steps. This paragraph (c) describes the three steps for applying the look-back method. These steps are illustrated by the examples in paragraph (h). The first step is to hypothetically reapply the percentage of completion method to all long-term contracts that are completed or adjusted in the current year (the ''filing year''), using the actual, rather than estimated, total contract price and contract costs. Based on this reapplication, the taxpayer determines the amount of taxable income (and alternative minimum taxable income) that would have been reported for each year prior to the filing year that is affected by contracts completed or adjusted in the filing year if the actual, rather than estimated, total contract price and costs had been used in applying the percentage of completion method to these contracts, and to any other contracts completed or adjusted in a year preceding the filing year. If the percentage of completion method only applies to alternative minimum taxable income for contracts completed or adjusted in the filing year, only alternative minimum taxable income is recomputed in the first step. The second step is to compare what the tax liability would have been under the percentage of completion method (as reapplied in the first step) for each tax year for which the tax liability is affected by income from contracts completed or adjusted in the filing year (a ''redetermination year'') with the most recent determination of tax liability for that year to produce a hypothetical underpayments or overpayment of tax. The third step is to apply the rate of interest on overpayments designated under section 6621 of the Code, compounded daily, to the hypothetical underpayment or overpayment of tax for each redetermination year to compute interest that runs, generally, from the due date (determined without regard to extensions) of the return for the redetermination year to the due date (determined without regard to extensions) of the return for the filing year. The net amount of interest computed under the third step is paid by or credited to the taxpayer for the filing year. Paragraph (d) provides a simplified marginal impact method that simplifies the second step—the computation of hypothetical underpayments or overpayments of tax liability for redetermination years—and, in some cases, the third step—the determination of the time period for computing interest.

(ii) *Post-completion revenue and expenses*—(A) *In general*. Except as otherwise provided in section 460(b)(6) (see §1.460–6(j) for method of electing) or §1.460–6(e), a taxpayer must apply the look-back method to a long-term contract in the completion year and in any post-completion year for which the taxpayer must adjust total contract price or total allocable contract costs, or both, under the PCM. Any year in which the look-back method must be reapplied is treated as a filing year. See Example (3) of paragraph (h)(4) for an illustration of how the look-back method is applied to post-completion adjustments.

(B) *Completion*. A contract is considered to be completed for purposes of the look-back method in the year in which final completion and acceptance within the meaning of §1.460–1(c)(3) have occurred.

(C) *Discounting of contract price and contract cost adjustments subsequent to completion; election not to discount*—(*1*) *General rule*. The amount of any post-completion adjustment to the total contract price or contract costs is discounted, solely for purposes of applying the look-back method, from its value at the time the amount is taken into account in computing taxable income to its value at the completion of the contract. The discount rate for this purpose is the Federal mid-term rate under section 1274(d) in effect at the time the amount is properly taken into account. For purposes of applying the look-back method for the completion year, no amounts are discounted, even if they are received after the completion year.

(*2*) *Election not to discount*. Notwithstanding the general requirement to discount post-completion adjustments, a taxpayer may elect not to discount contract price and contract cost adjustments with respect to any contract. The election not to discount is to be made on a contract-by-contract basis and is binding with respect to all post-completion adjustments that arise with respect to a contract for which an election has been made. An election not to discount with respect to any contract is made by stating that an election is being made on the taxpayer's timely filed Federal income tax return (determined with regard to extensions) for the first tax year after completion in which the taxpayer takes into account (i.e., includes in income or deducts) any adjustment to the contract price or contract costs. See §301.9100–8 of this chapter.

(*3*) *Year-end discounting convention.* In the absence of an election not to discount, any revisions to the contract price and contract costs must be discounted to their value as of the completion of the contract in reapplying the look-back method. For this purpose, the period of discounting is the period between the completion date of the contract and the date that any adjustment is taken into account in computing taxable income. Although taxpayers may use the period between the months in which these two events actually occur, in many cases, these dates may not be readily identifiable. Therefore, for administrative convenience, taxpayers are permitted to use the period between the end of the tax years in which these events occur as the period of discounting provided that the convention is used consistently with respect to all post-completion adjustments for all contracts of the taxpayer the adjustments to which are discounted. In that case, the taxpayer must use as the discount rate the Federal mid-term rate under section 1274(d) as of the end of the tax year in which any revision is taken into account in computing taxable income.

(D) *Revenue acceleration rule.* Section 460(b)(1) imposes a special rule that requires a taxpayer to include in gross income, for the tax year immediately following the year of completion, any previously unreported portion of the total contract price (including amounts that the taxpayer expects to receive in the future) determined as of that year, even if the percentage of completion ratio is less than 100 percent because the taxpayer expects to incur additional allocable contract costs in a later year. At the time any remaining portion of the contract price is includible in income under this rule, no offset against this income is permitted for estimated future contract costs. To achieve the requirement to report all remaining contract revenue without regard to additional estimated costs, a taxpayer must include only costs actually incurred through the end of the tax year in the denominator of the percentage of completion ratio in applying the percentage of completion method for any tax years after the year of completion. The look-back method also must be reapplied for the year immediately following the year of completion if any portion of the contract price is includible in income in that year by reason of section 460(b)(1). For purposes of reapplying the look-back method as a result of this inclusion in income, the taxpayer must only include in the denominator of the percentage of completion ratio the actual contract costs incurred as of the end of the year, even if the taxpayer reasonably expects to incur additional allocable contract costs. To the extent that costs are incurred in a subsequent tax year, the look-back method is reapplied in that year (or a later year if the delayed reapplication method is used), and the taxpayer is entitled to receive interest for the post-completion adjustment to contract costs. Because this reapplication occurs subsequent to the completion year, only the cumulative costs incurred as of the end of the reapplication year are includible in the denominator of the percentage of completion ratio.

(2) *Look-back Step One*—(i) *Hypothetical reallocation of income among prior tax years.* For each filing year, a taxpayer must allocate total contract income among prior tax years, by hypothetically applying the percentage of completion method to all contracts that are completed or adjusted in the filing year using the rules of this paragraph (c)(2). The taxpayer must reallocate income from those contracts among all years preceding the filing year that are affected by those contracts using the total contract price and contract costs, as determined as of the end of the filing year (''actual contract price and costs''), rather than the estimated contract price and contract costs. The taxpayer then must determine the amount of taxable income and the amount of alternative minimum taxable income that would have been reported for each affected tax year preceding the filing year if the percentage of completion method had been applied on the basis of actual contract price and contract costs in reporting income from all contracts completed or adjusted in the filing year and in any preceding year. If the percentage of completion method only applies to alternative minimum taxable

income from the contract, only alternative minimum taxable income is recomputed in the first step. For purposes of reallocating income (and costs if the 10-percent year changes for a taxpayer using the 10-percent method of section 460(b)(5)) under the look-back method, the method of computing the percentage of completion ratio is the same method used to report income from the contract on the taxpayer's return. (Thus, an election to use the 10-percent method or the simplified cost-to-cost method is taken into account). See Example (1) of paragraph (h)(2) for an illustration of Step One.

(ii) *Treatment of estimated future costs in year of completion.* If a taxpayer reasonably expects to incur additional allocable contract costs in a tax year subsequent to the year in which the contract is completed, the taxpayer includes the actual costs incurred as of the end of the completion year plus the additional allocable contract costs that are reasonably expected to be incurred (to the extent includible under the taxpayer's percentage of completion method) in the denominator of the percentage of completion ratio. The completion year is the only filing year for which the taxpayer may include additional estimated costs in the denominator of the percentage of completion ratio in applying the look-back method. If the look-back method is reapplied in any year after the completion year, only the cumulative costs incurred as of the end of the year of reapplication are includible in the denominator of the percentage of completion ratio in reapplying the look-back method.

(iii) *Interim reestimates not considered.* The look-back method cannot be applied to a contract before it is completed. Accordingly, for purposes of applying Step One, the actual total contract price and contract costs are substituted for the previous estimates of total contract price and contract costs only with respect to contracts that have been completed in the filing year and in a tax year preceding the filing year. No adjustments are made under Step One for contracts that have not been completed prior to the end of the current filing year, even if, as of the end of this year, the estimated total contract price or contract costs for these uncompleted contracts is different from the estimated amount that was used during any tax year for which taxable income is recomputed with respect to completed contracts under the look-back method for the current filing year.

(iv) *Tax years in which income is affected.* In general, because income under the percentage of completion method is generally reported as costs are incurred, the taxable income and alternative minimum taxable income are recomputed only for each year in which allocable contract costs were incurred. However, there will be exceptions to this general rule. For example, a taxpayer may be required to cumulatively adjust the income from a contract in a year in which no allocable contract costs are incurred if the estimated total contract price or contract costs was revised in that year. However, in applying the look-back method, no contract income is allocated to that year. Thus, there may be a difference between the amount of contract income originally reported for that year and the amount of contract income as reallocated. Similarly, because of the revenue acceleration rule of section 460(b)(1), income may be reported in the year immediately following the completion year even though no costs were incurred during that year and, in applying the look-back method in that year or another year, if additional costs are incurred or the contract price is adjusted in a later year, no income is allocated to the year immediately following the completion year.

(v) *Costs incurred prior to contract execution; 10-percent method*—(A) *General rule.* The look-back method does not require allocation of contract income to tax years before the contract was entered into. Costs incurred prior to the year a contract is entered into are first taken into account in the numerator of the percentage of completion ratio in the year the contract is entered into. A taxpayer using the 10-percent method must also use the 10-percent method in applying the look-back method, using actual total contract costs to determine the 10-percent year.

Thus, contract income is never reallocated to a year before the 10-percent year as determined on the basis of actual contract costs. If the 10-percent year is earlier as a result of applying Step One of the look-back method, contract costs incurred up to and including the new 10-percent year (as determined based on actual contract costs), are reallocated from the original 10-percent year to the new 10-percent, and costs incurred in later years but before the old 10-percent year are reallocated to those years. If the 10-percent year is later as a result of applying Step One of the look-back method, contract costs incurred up to and including the new 10-percent year are reallocated from all prior years to the new 10-percent year. This is the only case in which costs are reallocated under the look-back method.

(B) *Example.* The application of the look-back method by a taxpayer using the 10-percent method is illustrated by the following example:

Example. Z elected to use the 10-percent method of section 460(b)(5) for reporting income under the percentage of completion method. Z entered into a contract in 1990 for a fixed price of $1,000*x*. During 1990, Z incurred allocable contract costs of $80*x* and estimated that it would incur a total of $900*x* for the entire contract. Since $80*x* is less than 10 percent of total estimated contract costs, Z reported no revenue from the contract in 1990 and deferred the $80*x* of costs incurred. In 1991, Z incurred an additional $620*x* of contract costs, and completed the contract. Accordingly, in its 1991 return, Z reported the entire contract price of $1,000*x*, and deducted the $620*x* of costs incurred in 1991 and the $80*x* of costs incurred in 1990.

Under section 460(b)(5), the 10-percent method applies both for reporting contract income and the look-back method. Under the look-back method, since the costs incurred in 1990 ($80*x*) exceed 10 percent of the actual total contract costs ($700*x*), Z is required to allocate $114*x* of contract revenue ($80*x*/$700*x*×$1,000*x*) and the $80*x* of costs incurred to 1990. Thus, application of the look-back method results in a net increase in taxable income for 1990 of $34*x*, solely for purposes of the look-back method.

(vi) *Amount treated as contract price*—(A) *General rule.* The amount that is treated as total contract price for purposes of applying the percentage of completion method and reapplying the percentage of completion method under the look-back method under Step One includes all amounts that the taxpayer expects to receive from the customer. Thus, amounts are treated as part of the contract price as soon as it is reasonably estimated that they will be received, even if the all-events test has not yet been met.

(B) *Contingencies.* Any amounts related to contingent rights or obligations, such as incentive fees or amounts in dispute, are not separated from the contract and accounted for under a non-long-term contract method of accounting, notwithstanding any provision in §1.460–4(b)(4)(i), to the contrary. Instead, those amounts are treated as part of the total contract price in applying the look-back method. For example, if an incentive fee under a contract to manufacture a satellite is payable to the taxpayer after a specified period of successful performance, the incentive fee is includible in the total contract price at the time and to the extent that it can reasonably be predicted that the performance objectives will be met, . A portion of the contract price that is in dispute is included in the total contract price at the time and to the extent that the taxpayer can reasonably expect the dispute will be resolved in the taxpayer's favor (without regard to when the taxpayer receives payment for the amount in dispute or when the dispute is finally resolved).

(C) *Change orders.* In applying the look-back method, a change order with respect to a contract is not treated as a separate contract unless the change order would be treated as a separate contract under the rules for severing and aggregating contracts provided in §1.460–1(e). Thus, if a change order is not treated as a separate contract, the contract price and contract costs attributable to the change order must be taken into account in allocating contract income to all tax years affected by the underlying contract.

(3) *Look-back Step Two: Computation of hypothetical overpayment or underpayment of tax*—(i) *In general.* Step Two involves the computation of a hypothetical overpayment or underpayment of tax for each year in which the tax liability is affected by income from contracts that are completed or adjusted

in the filing year (a ''redetermination year''). The application of Step Two depends on whether the taxpayer uses the simplified marginal impact method contained in paragraph (d) or the actual method described in this paragraph (c)(3). The remainder of this paragraph (c)(3) does not apply if a taxpayer uses the simplified marginal impact method.

(ii) *Redetermination of tax liability.* Under the method described in this paragraph (c)(3) (the ''actual method''), a taxpayer, first, must determine what its regular and alternative minimum tax liability would have been for each redetermination year if the amounts of contract income allocated in Step One for all contracts completed or adjusted in the filing year and in any prior year were substituted for the amounts of contract income reported under the percentage of completion method on the taxpayer's original return (or as subsequently adjusted on examination, or by amended return). See Example (2) of paragraph (h)(3) for an illustration of Step Two.

(iii) *Hypothetical underpayment or overpayment.* After redetermining the income tax liability for each tax year affected by the reallocation of contract income, the taxpayer then determines the amount, if any, of the hypothetical underpayment or overpayment of tax for each of these redetermination years. The hypothetical underpayment or overpayment for each affected year is the difference between the tax liability as redetermined under the look-back method for that year and the amount of tax liability determined as of the latest of the following:

(A) The original return date;

(B) The date of a subsequently amended or adjusted return (if, however, the amended return is due to a carryback described in section 6611(f), see paragraph (c)(4)(iii)); or,

(C) The last previous application of the look-back method (in which case, the previous hypothetical tax liability is used).

(iv) *Cumulative determination of tax liability.* The redetermination of tax liability resulting from previous applications of the look-back method is cumulative. Thus, for example, in computing the amount of a hypothetical overpayment or underpayment of tax for a redetermination year, the current hypothetical tax liability is compared to the hypothetical tax liability for that year determined as of the last previous application of the look-back method.

(v) *Years affected by look-back only.* A redetermination of income tax liability under Step Two is required for every tax year for which the tax liability would have been affected by a change in the amount of income or loss for any other year for which a redetermination is required. For example, if the allocation of contract income under Step One changed the amount of a net operating loss that was carried back to a year preceding the year the taxpayer entered into the contract, the tax liability for the earlier year must be redetermined.

(vi) *Definition of tax liability.* For purposes of Step Two, the income tax liability must be redetermined by taking into account all applicable additions to tax, credits, and net operating loss carrybacks and carryovers. Thus, the tax, if any, imposed under section 55 (relating to alternative minimum tax) must be taken into account. For example, if the taxpayer did not pay alternative minimum tax, but would have paid alternative minimum tax for that year if actual rather than estimated contract price and costs had been used in determining contract income for the year, the amount of any hypothetical overpayment or underpayment of tax must be determined by comparing the hypothetical total tax liability (including hypothetical alternative minimum tax liability) with the actual tax liability for that year. The effect of taking these items into account in applying the look-back method is illustrated in Examples (4) through (7) of paragraphs (h)(5) through (h)(8) below.

(4) *Look-back Step Three: Calculation of interest on underpayment or overpayment*—(i) *In general.* After determining a hypothetical underpayment or overpayment of tax for each redetermination year, the taxpayer must determine the interest charged or credited on each of these amounts. Interest on the amount determined under Step Two is determined by applying the overpayment rate designated under

section 6621, compounded daily. In general, the time period over which interest is charged on hypothetical underpayments or credited on hypothetical overpayments begins at the due date (not including extensions) of the return for the redetermination year for which the hypothetical underpayment or overpayment determined in Step Two is computed. This time period generally ends on the earlier of:

(A) The due date (not including extensions) of the return for the filing year, and

(B) The date both

(*1*) The income tax return for the filing year is filed, and

(*2*) The tax for that year has been paid in full. If a taxpayer uses the simplified marginal impact method contained in paragraph (d), the remainder of this paragraph (c)(4) does not apply.

(ii) *Changes in the amount of a loss or credit carryback or carryover*. The time period for determining interest may be different in cases involving loss or credit carrybacks or carryovers in order to properly reflect the time period during which the taxpayer (in the case of an underpayment) or the Government (in the case of an overpayment) had the use of the amount determined to be a hypothetical underpayment or overpayment. Thus, if a reallocation of contract income under Step One results in an increase or decrease to a net operating loss carryback (but not a carryforward), the interest due or to be refunded must be computed on the increase or decrease in tax attributable to the change to the carryback only from the due date (not including extensions) of the return for the redetermination year that generated the carryback and not from the due date of the return for the redetermination year in which the carryback was absorbed. In the case of a change in the amount of a carryover as a result of applying the lookback method, interest is computed from the due date of the return for the year in which the carryover was absorbed. See Examples (8) and (9) of paragraph (h)(9) for an illustration of these rules.

(iii) *Changes in the amount of tax liability that generated a subsequent refund*. If the amount of tax liability for a redetermination year (as reported on the taxpayer's original return, as subsequently adjusted on examination, as adjusted by amended return, or as redetermined by the last previous application of the look-back method) is decreased by the application of the look-back method, and any portion of the redetermination year tax liability was absorbed by a loss or credit carryback arising in a year subsequent to the redetermination year, the look-back method applies as follows to properly reflect the time period of the use of the tax overpayment. To the extent the amount of tax absorbed because of the carryback exceeds the total hypothetical tax liability for the year (as redetermined under the look-back method) the taxpayer is entitled to receive interest only until the due date (not including extensions) of the return for the year in which the carryback arose.

Example. Upon the completion of a long-term contract in 1990, the taxpayer redetermines its tax liability for 1988 under the look-back method. This redetermination results in a hypothetical reduction of tax liability from \$1,500*x* (actual liability originally reported) to \$1,200*x* (hypothetical liability). In addition, the taxpayer had already received a refund of some or all of the actual 1988 tax by carrying back a net operating loss (NOL) that arose in 1989. The time period over which interest would be computed on the hypothetical overpayment of \$300*x* for 1988 would depend on the amount of the refund generated by the carryback, as illustrated by the following three alternative situations:

(A) If the amount refunded because of the NOL is \$1,500*x:* interest is credited to the taxpayer on the entire hypothetical overpayment of \$300*x* from the due date of the 1988 return, when the hypothetical overpayment occurred, until the due date of the 1989 return, when the taxpayer received a refund for the entire amount of the 1988 tax, including the hypothetical overpayment.

(B) If the amount refunded because of the NOL is \$1,000*x:* interest is credited to the taxpayer on the entire amount of the hypothetical overpayment of \$300*x* from the due date of the 1988 return, when the hypothetical overpayment occurred, until the due date of the 1990 return. In this situation interest is credited until the due date of the return for the completion year of the contract, rather than the due date of the return for the year in which the carryback arose, because the amount refunded was less than the redetermined tax liability. Therefore, no portion of the hypothetical overpayment is treated as having been refunded to the taxpayer before the filing year.

(C) If the amount refunded because of the NOL is $1,300$x$−: interest is credited to the taxpayer on 100x$ ($1,300$x$−$1,200x) from the due date of the 1988 return until the due date of the 1989 return because only this portion of the total hypothetical overpayment is treated as having been refunded to the taxpayer before the filing year. However, the taxpayer did not receive a refund for the remaining 200x$ of the overpayment at that time and, therefore, is credited with interest on 200x$ through the due date of the tax return for 1990, the filing year. See Examples (10) and (11) of paragraph (h)(9) for a further illustration of this rule.

(d) *Simplified marginal impact method*—(1) *Introduction.* This paragraph (d) provides a simplified method for calculating look-back interest. Any taxpayer may elect this simplified marginal impact method, except that pass-through entities described in paragraph (d)(4) of this section are required to apply the simplified marginal impact method at the entity level with respect to domestic contracts and the owners of those entities do not apply the look-back method to those contracts. Under the simplified marginal impact method, a taxpayer calculates the hypothetical underpayments or overpayments of tax for a prior year based on an assumed marginal tax rate. A taxpayer electing to use the simplified marginal impact method must use the method for each long-term contract for which it reports income (except with respect to domestic contracts if the taxpayer is an owner in a widely held pass-through entity that is required to use the simplified marginal impact method at the entity level for those contracts).

(2) *Operation*—(i) *In general.* Under the simplified marginal impact method, income from those contracts that are completed or adjusted in the filing year is first reallocated in accordance with the procedures of Step One contained in paragraph (c)(2) of this section. Step Two is modified in the following manner. The hypothetical underpayment or overpayment of tax for each year of the contract (a ''redetermination year'') is determined by multiplying the applicable regular tax rate (as defined in paragraph (d)(2)(iii)) by the increase or decrease in regular taxable income (or, if it produces a greater amount, by multiplying the applicable alternative minimum tax rate by the increase or decrease in alternative minimum taxable income, whether or not the taxpayer would have been subject to the alternative minimum tax) that results from reallocating income to the tax year under Step One. Generally, the product of the alternative minimum tax rate and the increase or decrease in alternative minimum taxable income will be the greater of the two amounts described in the preceding sentence only with respect to contracts for which a taxpayer uses the full percentage of completion method only for alternative minimum tax purposes and uses the completed contract method, or the percentage of completion-capitalized cost method, for regular tax purposes. Step Three is then applied. Interest is credited to the taxpayer on the net overpayment and is charged to the taxpayer on the net underpayment for each redetermination year from the due date (determined without regard to extensions) of the return for the redetermination year until the earlier of

(A) The due date (determined without regard to extensions) of the return for the filing year, and

(B) The first date by which both the return is filed and the tax is fully paid.

(ii) *Applicable tax rate.* For purposes of determining hypothetical underpayments or overpayments of tax under the simplified marginal impact method, the applicable regular tax rate is the highest rate of tax in effect for the redetermination year under section 1 in the case of an individual and under section 11 in the case of a corporation. The applicable alternative minimum tax rate is the rate of tax in effect for the taxpayer under section 55(b)(1). The highest rate is determined without regard to the taxpayer's actual rate bracket and without regard to any additional surtax imposed for the purpose of phasing out multiple tax brackets or exemptions.

(iii) *Overpayment ceiling.* The net hypothetical overpayment of tax for any redetermination year is limited to the taxpayer's total federal income tax liability for the redetermination year reduced by the cumulative amount of net hypothetical overpayments of tax for that redetermination year resulting from earlier applications of the look-back method. If the reallocation of contract income results in a net overpayment of tax and this amount exceeds the actual tax liability (as of the filing year) for the redetermination year, as adjusted for past applications of the look-back method and taking into account net operating loss, capital loss, or credit carryovers and carrybacks to that year, the actual tax so adjusted is treated as the overpayment for the redetermination year. This overpayment ceiling does not apply when the simplified marginal impact method is applied at the entity level by a widely held pass-through entity in accordance with paragraph (d)(4) of this section.

(iv) *Example.* The application of the simplified marginal impact method is illustrated by the following example:

Example. Corporation X, a calendar-year taxpayer, reports income from long-term contracts and elected the simplified marginal impact method when it filed its income tax return for 1989. X uses only the percentage of completion method for both regular taxable income and alternative minimum taxable income. X completed contracts A, B, and C in 1989 and, therefore, was required to apply the look-back method in 1989. Income was actually reported for these contracts in 1987, 1988, and 1989. X's applicable tax rate, as determined under section 11, for the redetermination years 1987 and 1988 was 40 percent and 34 percent, respectively. The amount of contract income originally reported and reallocated for contracts A, B, and C, and the net overpayments and underpayments for the redetermination years are as follows:

	1987	1988
Contract A:		
Originally reported	$5,000*x*	$4,000*x*
Reallocated	3,000*x*	5,000*x*
Increase/(Decrease)	(2,000*x*)	1,000*x*
Contract B:		
Originally reported	6,000*x*	2,000*x*
Reallocated	7,000*x*	1,500*x*
Increase/(Decrease)	1,000*x*	(500*x*)
Contract C:		
Originally reported	8,000*x*	5,000*x*
Reallocated	4,000*x*	7,000*x*
Increase/(Decrease)	(4,000*x*)	2,000*x*
Net Increase/(Decrease)	(5,000*x*)	2,500*x*
Tentative (Underpayment)/Overpayment:		
@ .40	2,000*x*	
@ .34		(850*x*)
Ceiling:		
Actual Tax Liability (After Carryovers and Carrybacks)	1,500*x*	500*x*
Final (Underpayment)/Overpayment	1,500*x*	(850*x*)

Under the simplified marginal impact method, X determined a tentative hypothetical net overpayment for 1987 and a net underpayment for 1988. X determined these amounts by first aggregating the difference for contracts A, B, and C between the amount of contract price originally reported and the amount of contract price as reallocated and, then, applying the highest regular tax rate to the aggregate decrease in income for 1987 and the aggregate increase in income for 1988.

However, X's overpayment for 1987 is subject to a ceiling based on X's total tax liability. Because the tentative net overpayment of tax for 1987 exceeds the actual tax liability for that year after taking into account carryovers and carrybacks to that year, the final overpayment under the simplified marginal impact method is the amount of tax liability paid instead of the tentative net overpayment. Since application of the look-back method for 1988 results in a tentative underpayment of tax, it is not subject to a ceiling. If the look-back method is applied in 1991, the ceiling amount for 1987 will be zero and the ceiling amount for 1988 will be $1,350.

X is entitled to receive interest on the hypothetical overpayment from March 15, 1988, to March 15, 1990. X is required to pay interest on the underpayment from March 15, 1989, to March 15, 1990.

(3) *Anti-abuse rule.* If the simplified marginal impact method is used with respect to any long-term contract (including a contract of a widely held pass-through entity), the district director may recompute interest for the contract (including domestic contracts of widely held pass-through entities) under the look-back method using the actual method (and without regard to the simplified marginal impact method). The district director may make such a recomputation only if the amount of income originally reported with respect to the contract for any redetermination year exceeds the amount of income reallocated under the look-back method with respect to that contract for that year (using actual contract price and contract costs) by the lesser of $1,000,000 or 20 percent of the amount of income as reallocated (*i.e.*, based on actual contract price and contract costs) under the look-back method with respect to that contract for that year. In determining whether to exercise this authority upon examination of the Form 8697, the district director may take into account whether the taxpayer overreported income

for a purpose of receiving interest under the look-back method on a hypothetical overpayment determined at the applicable tax rate. The district director also may take into account whether the taxpayer underreported income for the year in question with respect to other contracts. Notwithstanding the look-back method, the district director may require an adjustment to the tax liability for any open tax year if the taxpayer did not apply the percentage of completion method properly on its original return.

(4) *Application*—(i) *Required use by certain pass-through entities*—(A) *General rule*. The simplified marginal impact method is required to be used with respect to income reported from domestic contracts by a pass-through entity that is either a partnership, an S corporation, or a trust, and that is not closely held. With respect to contracts described in the preceding sentence, the simplified marginal impact method is applied by the pass-through entity at the entity level. For determining the amount of any hypothetical underpayment or overpayment, the applicable regular and alternative minimum tax rates, respectively, are generally the highest rates of tax in effect for corporations under section 11 and section 55 (b)(1). However, the applicable regular and alternative minimum tax rates are the highest rates of tax imposed on individuals under section 1 and section 55 (b)(1) if, at all times during the redetermination year involved (*i.e.*, the year in which the hypothetical increase or decrease in income arises), more than 50 percent of the interests in the entity were held by individuals directly or through 1 or more pass-through entities.

(B) *Closely held*. A pass-through entity is closely held if, at any time during any redetermination year, 50 percent of more (by value) of the beneficial interests in that entity are held (directly or indirectly) by or for 5 or fewer persons. For this purpose, the term ''person'' has the same meaning as in section 7701(a)(1), except that a pass-through entity is not treated as a person. In addition, the constructive ownership rules of section 1563(e) apply by substituting the term ''beneficial interest'' for the term ''stock'' and by substituting the term ''pass-through entity'' for the term, ''corporation'' used in that section, as appropriate, for purposes of determining whether a beneficial interest in a pass-through entity is indirectly owned by any person.

(C) *Examples*. The following examples illustrate the application of the rules of paragraph (d)(4)(i):

Example (1). P, a partnership, began a long-term contract on March 1, 1986, and completed this contract in its tax year ending December 31, 1989. P used the percentage of completion method for all contract income. Substantially all of the income from the contract arose from U.S. sources. At all times during all of the years for which income was required to be reported under the contract, exactly 25 percent of the value of P's interests was owned by Corporation M. The remaining 75 percent of the value of P's interests was owned in equal shares by 15 unrelated individuals, who are also unrelated to Corporation M. M's ownership of P represents less than 50 percent of the value of the beneficial interests in P, and, therefore, viewed alone, is insufficient to make P a closely held partnership. In addition, because no 4 of the individual owners together own 25 percent or more of the remaining value of P's beneficial interests, there is no group of 5 owners that together own, directly or indirectly, 50 percent or more by value of the beneficial interests in P. Therefore, P is not closely held pass-through entity.

Because P is not a closely held pass-through entity, and because P completed the contract after the effective date of section 460(b)(4), P is required to use the simplified marginal impact method. Any interest computed under the look-back method will be paid to, or collected from, P, rather than its partners, and must be reported to each of the partners on Form 1065 as interest income or expense. Further, assume that, for the redetermination years, Corporation M is subject to alternative minimum tax at the rate of 20 percent and 3 of the individuals who own interests in P are subject to the highest marginal tax rate of 33 percent in 1988. Regardless of the actual marginal tax rates of its partners, P is required to determine the underpayment or overpayment of tax for each redetermination year at the entity level by applying a single rate to the increase or decrease in income resulting from the reallocation of contract income under the look-back method. Because more than 50 percent of the interests in P are held by individuals, P must use the highest rate specified in section 1 for each redetermination year. Thus, the rate applied by P is 50 percent for 1986, 38.5 percent for 1987, and 28 percent for 1988.

Example (2). Assume the same facts as in Example (1), except that one of the individuals, Individual I, who directly owns 5 percent of the value of the interests of P, also owns 100 percent of the stock of Corporation M. Section 1563(e)(4) of the Code provides that stock owned directly or indirectly by or for a corporation is considered to be owned by any person who owns 5 percent or more in value of its stock in that proportion which the value of the stock which that person so owns bears to the value of all the stock in that corporation. Because section 460(b)(4)(C)(iii) and this paragraph (d)(4) provide that rules similar to the constructive ownership rules of section 1563(e) apply in determining whether a pass-through entity is closely held, all of M's interest in P is attributed to I because I owns 100 percent of the value of the stock in M. Accordingly, because I's direct 5 percent and constructive 25 percent ownership of P, plus the interests owned by any 4 other individual partners, equals 50 percent or more of the value of the beneficial interests of P, P is a closely held pass-through entity within the meaning of section 460(b)(4)(C)(iii). Therefore, P cannot use the simplified marginal impact method at the entity level. Accordingly, each of the partners of P must separately apply the look-back method to their respective interests in the income and expenses attributable to the contract, but each partner may elect to use the simplified marginal impact method with respect to the partner's share of income from the contract.

(D) *Domestic contracts*—(*1*) *General rule.* A domestic contract is any contract substantially all of the income of which is from sources in the United States. For this purpose, "substantially all" of the income from a long-term contract is considered to be from United States sources if 95 percent or more of the gross income from the contract is from sources within the United States as determined under the rules in sections 861 through 865.

(*2*) *Portion of contract income sourced.* In determining whether substantially all of the gross income from a long-term contract is from United States sources, taxpayers must apply the allocation and apportionment principles of sections 861 through 865 only to the portion of the contract accounted for under the percentage of completion method. Under the percentage of completion method, gross income from a long-term contract includes all payments to be received under the contract (*i.e.*, any amounts treated as contract price). Similarly, all costs taken into account in the computation of taxable income under the percentage of completion method are deducted from gross income rather than added to a cost of goods sold account that reduces gross income. Therefore, allocable contract costs are not considered in determining whether a long-term contract is a domestic contract or a foreign contract, even if, under the taxpayer's facts, the allocation of contract costs to any portion of a contract not accounted for under the percentage of completion method would affect the relative percentages of United States and foreign source gross income from the entire contract if this portion of the contract were taken into account in applying the 95-percent test.

(E) *Application to foreign contracts.* If a widely held pass-through entity has some foreign contracts and some domestic contracts, the owners of the pass-through entity each apply the look-back method (using, if they elect, the simplified marginal impact method) to their respective share of the income and expense from foreign contracts. Moreover, in applying the look-back method to foreign contracts at the owner level, the owners do not take into account their share of increases or decreases in contract income resulting from the application of the simplified marginal impact method with respect to domestic contracts at the entity level.

(F) *Effective date.* The simplified marginal impact method must be applied to pass-through entities described in paragraph (d)(4)(i) of this section with respect to domestic contracts completed or adjusted in tax years for which the due date of the return (determined with regard to extensions) of the pass-through entity is after November 9, 1988.

(ii) *Elective use*—(A) *General rule.* As provided in paragraph (d)(4)(i) of this section, the simplified marginal impact method must be used by certain pass-through entities with respect to domestic contracts. C corporations, individuals, and owners of closely held pass-through entities may elect the simplified marginal impact method. Owners of other pass-through entities may also elect the simplified marginal impact method with respect to all contracts other than those for which the simplified marginal impact method is required to be applied at the entity level. This rule applies to foreign contracts of widely held pass-through entities. In the case of an electing owner in a pass-through entity, the simplified marginal impact method is applied at the owner level, instead of at the entity level, with respect to the owner's share of the long-term contract income and expense reported by the pass-through entity.

(B) *Election requirements.* A taxpayer elects the simplified marginal impact method by stating that the election is being made on a timely filed income tax return (determined with regard to extensions) for the first tax year the election is to apply. An election to use the simplified marginal impact method applies to all applications of the look-back method to all eligible long-term contracts for the tax year for which the election is made and for any subsequent tax year. The election may not be revoked without the consent of the Commissioner.

(C) *Consolidated group consistency rule.* In the case of a consolidated group of corporations as defined in §1.1502–1(h), an election to use the simplified marginal impact method is made by the common parent of the group. The election is binding on all other affected members of the group (including members that join the group after the election is made with respect to all applications of the look-back method after joining). If a member subsequently leaves the group, the election remains binding as to that member unless the Commissioner consents to a revocation of the election. If a corporation using the simplified marginal impact method joins a group that does not use the method, the election is automatically revoked with respect to all applications of the look-back method after it joins the group.

(e) *Delayed reapplication method*—(1) *In general.* For purposes of reapplying the look-back method after the year of contract completion, a taxpayer may elect the delayed reapplication method to minimize the number of required reapplications of the look-back method. Under this method, the look-back method is reapplied after the year of completion of a contract (or after a subsequent application of the look-back method) only when the first one of the following conditions is met with respect to the contract:

(i) The net undiscounted value of increases or decreases in the contract price occurring since the time of the last application of the look-back method exceeds the lesser of $1,000,000 or 10 percent of the total contract price as of that time,

(ii) The net undiscounted value of increases or decreases in the contract costs occurring since the time of the last application of the look-back method exceeds the lesser of $1,000,000 or 10 percent of the total contract price as of that time,

(iii) The taxpayer goes out of existence,

(iv) The taxpayer reasonably believes the contract is finally settled and closed, or

(v) Neither condition (e)(1) (i), (ii), (iii), nor (iv) above is met by the end of the fifth tax year that begins after the last previous application of the look-back method.

(2) *Time and manner of making election.* An election to use the delayed reapplication method may be made for any filing year for which the due date of the return (determined with regard to extensions) is after June 12, 1990. The election is made by a statement to that effect on the taxpayer's timely filed Federal income tax return (determined with regard to extensions) for the first tax year the election is to be effective. An election to use the delayed reapplication method is binding with respect to all long-term contracts for which the look-back method would be reapplied without regard to the election in the year of election and any subsequent year unless the Commissioner consents to a revocation of the election. In the case of a consolidated group of corporations as defined in §1.1502–1(h), an election to use the delayed reapplication method is made by the common parent of the group. The election is binding on all other affected members of the group (including members that join the group after the election is made with respect to contracts

adjusted after joining). If a member subsequently leaves the group, the election remains binding as to that member unless the Commissioner consents to a revocation of the election. If a corporation that has made the election joins a consolidated group that has not made the election, the election is treated as revoked with respect to contracts adjusted after joining.

(3) *Examples.* The operation of this delayed reapplication method is illustrated by the following examples:

Example (1). X completes a contract in 1987, and applies the look-back method when its return for 1987 is filed. X properly uses $600,000 as the actual contract price in applying the look-back method. In 1990, as a result of the settlement of a dispute with its customer, X redetermines total contract price to be $640,000, and includes $40,000 in gross income. On its return for 1990, X states it is electing the delayed reapplication method. X is not required to reapply the look-back method at that time, because $40,000 does not exceed the lesser of $1,000,000 or 10 percent of the unadjusted contract price of $600,000, and 5 years have not passed since the last application of the look-back method.

Example (2). Assume the same facts as in Example (1), except that at the end of 1992, the fifth year after completion of the contract, no other adjustments to contract price or contract costs have occurred. X is required to reapply the look-back method in 1992 and, accordingly, redetermine its tax liability for each redetermination year. After redetermining the underpayment of tax for those years, X must compute the amount of interest charged on the underpayments. Although 1992 is the filing year, interest is due on the amount of each underpayment resulting from the adjustment only from the due date of the return for each redetermination year to the due date of the return for 1990 because the tax liability for the adjustment was fully paid in 1990. However, from the due of the 1990 return until the due date of the 1992 return, when the look-back method is reapplied for the adjustment, interest is due on the amount of interest attributable to the underpayments.

(f) *Look-back reporting*—(1) *Procedure.* The amount of any interest due from, or payable to, a taxpayer as a result of applying the look-back method is computed on Form 8697 for any filing year. In general, the look-back method is applied by the taxpayer that reports income from a long-term contract. See paragraph (g) of this section to determine who is responsible for applying the look-back method when, prior to the completion of a long-term contract, there is a transaction that changes the taxpayer that reports income from the contract.

(2) *Treatment of interest on return*—(i) *General rule.* The amount of interest required to be paid by a taxpayer is treated as an income tax under subtitle A, but only for purposes of subtitle F of the Code (other than sections 6654 and 6655), which addresses tax procedures and administration. Thus, a taxpayer that fails to pay the amount of interest due is subject to any applicable penalties under subtitle F, including, for example, an underpayment penalty under section 6651, and the taxpayer also is liable for underpayment interest under section 6601. However, interest required to be paid under the look-back method is treated as interest expense for purposes of computing taxable income under subtitle A, even though it is treated as income tax liability for subtitle F purposes. Interest received under the look-back method is treated as taxable interest income for all purposes, and is not treated as a reduction in tax liability or a tax refund. The determination of whether or not interest computed under the look-back method is treated as tax is determined on a ''net'' basis for each filing year. Thus, if a taxpayer computes for the current filing year both hypothetical overpayments and hypothetical underpayments for prior years, the taxpayer has an increase in tax only if the interest computed on the underpayments for all those prior years exceeds the interest computed on the overpayments for all those prior years, for all contracts completed or adjusted for the year.

(ii) *Timing of look-back interest.* For purposes of determining taxable income under subtitle A of the Code, any amount of interest payable to the taxpayer under the look-back method is includible in gross income as interest income in the tax year it is properly taken into account under the taxpayer's method of accounting for interest income. Any amount of interest required to be paid is taken into account as interest expense arising from an underpayment of income tax in the tax year it is properly taken into account under the taxpayer's method of accounting for interest expense. Thus, look-back interest required to be paid by an individual, or by a pass-through entity on behalf of an individual owner (or beneficiary) under the simplified marginal impact method, is personal interest and, therefore, is disallowed in accordance with §1.163–9T(b)(2). Interest determined at the entity level under the simplified marginal impact method is allocated among the owners (or beneficiaries) for reporting purposes in the same manner that interest income and interest expense are allocated to owners (or beneficiaries) and subject to the requirements of section 704 and any other applicable rules.

(3) *Statute of limitations and compounding of interest on look-back interest.* For guidance on the statute of limitations applicable to the assessment and collection of look-back interest owed by a taxpayer, see sections 6501 and 6502. A taxpayer's claim for credit or refund of look-back interest previously paid by or collected from a taxpayer is a claim for credit or refund of an overpayment of tax and is subject to the statute of limitations provided in section 6511. A taxpayer's claim for look-back interest (or interest payable on look-back interest) that is not attributable to an amount previously paid by or collected from a taxpayer is a general, non-tax claim against the federal government. For guidance on the statute of limitations that applies to general, non-tax claims against the federal government, see 28 U.S.C. sections 2401 and 2501. For guidance applicable to the compounding of interest when the look-back interest is not paid, see sections 6601 to 6622.

(g) *Mid-contract change in taxpayer*—(1) *In general.* The rules in this paragraph (g) apply if, as described in §1.460–4(k), prior to the completion of a long-term contract accounted for using the PCM or the PCCM by a taxpayer (old taxpayer), there is a transaction that makes another taxpayer (new taxpayer) responsible for accounting for income from the same contract. The rules governing constructive completion transactions are provided in paragraph (g)(2) of this section, while the rules governing step-in-the-shoes transactions are provided in paragraph (g)(3) of this section. For purposes of this paragraph, pre-transaction years are all taxable years of the old taxpayer in which the old taxpayer accounted for (or should have accounted for) gross receipts from the contract, and post-transaction years are all taxable years of the new taxpayer in which the new taxpayer accounted for (or should have accounted for) gross receipts from the contract.

(2) *Constructive completion transactions.* In the case of a transaction described in §1.460–4(k)(2)(i) (constructive completion transaction), the look-back method is applied by the old taxpayer with respect to pre-transaction years upon the date of the transaction and, if the new taxpayer uses the PCM or the PCCM to account for the contract, by the new taxpayer with respect to post-transaction years upon completion of the contract. The contract price and allocable contract costs to be taken into account by the old taxpayer or the new taxpayer in applying the look-back method are described in §1.460–4(k)(2).

(3) *Step-in-the-shoes transactions*—(i) *General rules.* In the case of a transaction described in §1.460–4(k)(3)(i) (step-in-the-shoes transaction), the look-back method is not applied at the time of the transaction, but is instead applied for the first time when the contract is completed by the new taxpayer. Upon completion of the contract, the look-back method is applied by the new taxpayer with respect to both pre-transaction years and post-transaction years, taking into account all amounts reasonably expected to be received by either the old or new taxpayer and all allocable contract costs incurred during both periods as described in §1.460–4(k)(3). The new taxpayer is liable for filing the Form 8697 and for interest computed on hypothetical underpayments of tax, and is entitled to receive interest with respect to hypothetical overpayments of tax, for both pre- and post-transaction years. The old taxpayer will be secondarily liable for any interest required to be paid with respect to pre-transaction years reduced by any interest on pre-transaction overpayments.

(ii) *Application of look-back method to pre-transaction period*—(A) *Contract price.* The actual contract price for pre-transaction taxable years must be determined by the new taxpayer without regard to any contract price adjustment described in paragraph (k)(3)(iv)(B)(1) of this section.

(B) *Method.* The new taxpayer may apply the look-back method to each pre-transaction taxable year that is a redetermination year using the simplified marginal impact method described in paragraph (d) of this section (regardless of whether or not the old taxpayer would have actually used that method and without regard to the tax liability ceiling). But see paragraph (d)(4) of this section, which requires use of the simplified marginal impact method by certain pass-through entities.

(C) *Interest accrual period.* With respect to any hypothetical underpayment or overpayment of tax for a pre-transaction taxable year, interest accrues from the due date of the old taxpayer's tax return (not including extensions) for the taxable year of the underpayment or overpayment until the due date of the new taxpayer's return (not including extensions) for the completion year or the year of a post-completion adjustment, whichever is applicable.

(D) *Information old taxpayer must provide.* In order to help the new taxpayer to apply the look-back method with respect to pre-transaction taxable years, any old taxpayer that accounted for income from a long-term contract under the PCM or PCCM for either regular or alternative minimum tax purposes is required to provide the information described in this paragraph to the new taxpayer by the due date (not including extensions) of the old taxpayer's income tax return for the first taxable year ending on or after a step-in-the-shoes transaction described in §1.460–4(k)(3)(i). The required information is as follows—

(*1*) The portion of the contract reported by the old taxpayer under PCM for regular and alternative minimum tax purposes (i.e., whether the old taxpayer used PCM, the 40/60 PCCM method, or the 70/30 PCCM method);

(*2*) Any submethods used in the application of PCM (e.g., the simplified cost-to-cost method or the 10-percent method);

(*3*) The amount of total contract price reported by year;

(*4*) The numerator and the denominator of the completion factor by year;

(*5*) The due date (not including extensions) of the old taxpayer's income tax returns for each taxable year in which income was required to be reported;

(*6*) Whether the old taxpayer was a corporate or a noncorporate taxpayer by year; and

(*7*) Any other information required by the Commissioner by administrative pronouncement.

(iii) *Application of look-back method to post-transaction years.* With respect to post-transaction taxable years, the new taxpayer must use the same look-back method it uses for other contracts (i.e., the simplified marginal impact method or the actual method) to determine the amount of any hypothetical overpayment or underpayment of tax and the time period for computing interest on these amounts.

(iv) *S corporation elections.* Following the conversion of a C corporation into an S corporation, the look-back method is applied at the entity level with respect to contracts entered into prior to the conversion, notwithstanding section 460(b)(4)(B)(i).

(4) *Effective date.* This paragraph (g) is applicable for transactions on or after May 15, 2002.

(h) *Examples*—(1) *Overview.* This paragraph provides computational examples of the rules of this section. Except as otherwise noted, the examples involve calendar-year taxpayers and involve long-term contracts subject to section 460 that are accounted for using the percentage of completion method, rather than the percentage of completion-capitalized cost method. If the percentage of completion-capitalized cost method were used by a taxpayer described in the examples, the amounts of contract income and expenses shown in the examples would be reduced, for purposes of determining regular taxable income, to the appropriate fraction (40, 70, or 90 percent) of contract items accounted for under the percentage of completion method. Tens of thousands of dollars ($ 00,000's) are omitted from the figures in the examples. The contracts described in the examples are assumed to be the taxpayers' only contracts that are subject to the look-back method of section 460. Except as otherwise stated, the examples assume that the taxpayer has no adjustments and preferences for purposes of section 55, so that alternative minimum taxable income is the same as taxable income, and no alternative minimum tax is imposed for the years involved. The examples assume that the taxpayer does not elect the 10-percent method, the simplified marginal impact method, or the delayed reapplication method.

(2) *Step One*. The following example illustrates the application of paragraph (c)(2):

Example (1). In 1989, W completes three long-term contracts, A, B, and C, entered into on January 1 of 1986, 1987, and 1988, respectively. For Contract A, W used the completed contract method of accounting. For Contract B, W used the percentage of completion-capitalized cost method of accounting, taking into account 60 percent of contract income under W's normal method of accounting, which was the completed contract method. For Contract C, W used the percentage of completion method of accounting. The total price for each contract was $1,000. In computing alternative minimum taxable income, W is required to use the percentage of completion method for Contracts B and C. W used regular tax costs for purposes of determining the degree of contract completion under the alternative minimum tax.

Contract A is not taken into account for purposes of applying the look-back method, because it is subject to neither section 460 nor section 56(a)(3). Thus, even if W had used the percentage of completion method as permitted under §1.451–3, instead of the completed contract method, the look-back method would not be applicable because the Contract A was entered into before the effective date of section 460.

The actual costs allocated to Contracts B and C under section 460(c) and incurred in each year of the contract were as follows:

Contract	1987	1988	1989	Total
B	$200	$400	$200	$800
C	100	300	400	800

In applying the look-back method, the first step is to allocate the contract price among tax years preceding and including the completion year. That allocation would produce the following amounts of gross income for purposes of the regular tax. Note that no income from Contract C is allocated to 1987, the year before the contract was entered into, even though contract costs were incurred in 1987:

Contract	1987	1988	1989
B	$100 (40%X$200/$800X$1000)	$200 ((40%X$600/$800X$1000)–$100)	$700
C	0	500 ($400/$800X$1000)	500

Because the percentage of completion-capitalized cost method may not be used for alternative minimum tax purposes, the allocation of contract income would produce the following amounts of gross income for purposes of computing alternative minimum taxable income:

Contract	1987	1988	1989
B	$250 ($200/$800X$1000)	$500 (($600/$800X$1000)–$250)	$250
C	0	500	500

(3) *Step Two*. The following example illustrates the application of paragraph (c)(3):

Example (2). (i) X enters into two long-term contracts (D and E) in 1988. X determines its tax liability for 1988 as follows:

e=estimate

a=amount originally reported (actual)

h=hypothetical

	1988		Total
	D	E	
1988 contract costs	$3,000a	$2,000a	
Total contract costs	8,000e	8,000e	
Total contract price	10,000e	10,000e	
1988 completion %	37.5e	25e	
1988 gross income	3,750a	2,500a	
Less, 1988 costs	(3,000a)	(2,000a)	
1988 net contract income	750a	500a	$1,250a
Other 1988 net income (loss)			(2,000a)
Taxable income (NOL)			(750a)
Tax			0a
Refund from NOL carryback fully absorbed in 1985, at 46%			345a

(ii) X completes Contract D during 1989. X determines its taxable income for 1989 as follows:

	1989		Total
	D	E	
1989 contract costs	$3,000a	0a	
Total contract costs	6,000a	$9,000e	
Total contract price	10,000a	10,000e	
1989 completion %	100a	22.2e	
1989 gross income/(loss)	6,250a	(278a)	
Less, 1989 costs	(3,000a)	0a	
1989 net contract income	3,250a	(278a)	$2,972a
Other 1989 net income (loss)			0a
Taxable income (NOL)			2,972a
Tax at 34%			1,011a

(iii) For purposes of the look-back method, X must reallocate the actual total contract D price between 1988 and 1989 based on the actual total contract D costs. This results in the following hypothetical underpayment of tax for 1988 for purposes of the look-back method. Note that X does not reallocate the contract E price in applying the look-back method in 1989 because contract E has not been completed, even though X's estimate of contract E costs has changed. The following computation is only for purposes of applying the look-back method, and does not result in the assessment of a tax deficiency.

	1988		Total
	D	E	
1988 contract costs	$3,000a	$2,000a	
Total contract costs	6,000a	8,000e	
Total contract price	10,000a	10,000e	
1988 completion %	50a	25e	
1988 gross income	5,000h	2,500a	
Less, 1988 costs	(3,000a)	(2,000a)	
1988 net contract income	2,000h	500a	$2,500h
Other 1988 net income (loss)			(2,000a)
Taxable income (NOL)			500h
Tax at 34%			170h
Less, previously computed tax			−0a
Underpayment of 1988 tax			170h
Underpayment of 1985 tax from NOL carryback refund in 1988			345h
Total underpayment of tax			515h

For purposes of any subsequent application of the look-back method for which 1989 is a redetermination year, because the reallocation of contract income and redetermination of tax liability are cumulative, X will use for 1989 the amount of contract D income and the amount of tax liability that would have been reported in 1989 if X had used actual contract costs instead of the amounts that were originally reported using the estimate of $8,000. Assuming no subsequent revisions (due to, for example, adjustments to contract D price and costs determined after the end of 1989), this amount would be determined as follows:

	1989		Total
	D	E	
1989 contract costs	$3,000a	0a	
Total contract costs	6,000a	$9,000e	
Total contract price	10,000a	10,000e	
1989 completion %	100a	22.2e	
1989 gross income	5,000h	(278a)	
Less, 1989 costs	(3,000a)	0a	
1989 net contract income	2,000h	(278a)	$1,722h
Other 1989 net income (loss)			0a
Taxable income (NOL)			1,722h
Tax at 34%			585h

(iv) X completes contract E during 1990. X determines its taxable income for 1990 as follows:

	1990		Total
	D	E	
1990 contract costs		$7,000a	
Total contract costs		9,000a	
Total contract price		10,000a	
1990 completion %		100a	
1990 gross income		7,778a	
Less, 1990 costs		(7,000a)	
1990 net contract income		778a	$778a
Other 1990 net income (loss)			0a
Taxable income (NOL)			778a
Tax at 34%			265a

(v) For purposes of the look-back method, X must reallocate the actual total contract E price between the 1988, 1989, and 1990, based on the actual total contract E costs. This results in the following hypothetical overpayment of tax for 1988. Note that X uses the amount of income for contract D determined in the last previous application of the look-back method, and not the amount of income actually reported:

	1988		Total
	D	E	
1988 contract costs	$3,000a	$2,000a	
Total contract costs	$6,000a	$9,000a	
Total contract price	$10,000a	$10,000a	
1988 completion (%)	50a	22.2a	
1988 gross income	$5,000h	$2,222h	
Less, 1988 costs	($3,000a)	($2,000a)	
1988 net contract income	$2,000h	$222h	$2,222h
Other 1988 net income (loss)			($2,000a)
Taxable income (NOL)			$222h
Tax at 34%			$75h

	1988		Total
	D	E	
Less, previously computed tax (based on most recent application of the look-back method)	....	....	$170h
Overpayment of 1988 tax	....	....	($95h)

In applying the look-back method to 1989, X again uses the amounts substituted as of the last previous application of the look-back method with respect to contract D. Thus, X computes its hypothetical underpayment for 1989 as follows:

	1989		Total
	D	E	
1989 contract costs	$3,000a	0a	....
Total contract costs	$6,000a	$9,000a	....
Total contract price	$10,000a	$10,000a	....
1989 completion (%)	100a	22.2a	....
1989 gross income	$5,000h	$0h	....
Less, 1989 costs	($3,000a)	($0a)	....
1989 net contract income	$2,000h	0a	$2,000h
Other 1989 net income (loss)	....	....	($0a)
Taxable income (NOL)	....	....	$2,000h
Tax at 34%	....	....	$680h
Less, previously computed tax	....	....	$585h
Underpayment of 1989 tax	....	....	$95h

For purposes of any subsequent application of the look-back method for which 1990 is a redetermination year, X will use for 1990 the amount of Contract E income, and the amount of tax liability, that was originally reported in 1990 because X's estimate of the total contract costs from $8,000 to $9,000 did not change after 1989. Without regard to any subsequent revisions, these amounts are the same as in the table in paragraph (h)(3)(iv) above.

(4) *Post-completion adjustments*. The following example illustrates the application of paragraph (c)(1)(ii):

Example (3). The facts are the same as in Example (2). In 1991, X settles a lawsuit against its customer in Contract E. The customer pays X an additional $3,000, without interest, in 1991. Applying the Federal mid-term rate then in effect, this $3,000 has a discounted value at the time of contract completion in 1990 of $2,700. X is required to apply the look-back method for 1991 even though no contract was completed in 1991. X must include the full $3,000 adjustment (which was not previously includible in total contract price) in gross income for 1991. X does not elect not to discount adjustments to the contract price or costs. Thus, X adjusts the contract price by the discounted amount of the adjustment and, therefore, uses $12,700 (not $13,000) for total Contract E price, rather than $10,000, which was used when the look-back method was first applied with respect to Contract E.

For purposes of the look-back method, X must allocate the revised total Contract E price of $12,700 between 1988, 1989 and 1990 based on the actual total Contract E costs, and compare the resulting revised tax liability with the tax liability determined for the last previous application of the look-back method involving those years. This results in the following hypothetical underpayments of tax for purposes of the look-back method:

r=revised

	1988		Total
	D	E	
1988 contract costs	$3,000a	$2,000a	....
Total contract costs	$6,000a	$9,000a	....
Total contract price	$10,000a	$12,700r	....
1988 completion (%)	50a	22.2a	....
1988 gross income	$5,000h	$2,822rh	....
Less, 1988 costs	($3,000a)	($2,000a)	....

	1988		Total
	D	E	
1988 net contract income	$2,000h	822rh	$2,222rh
Other 1988 net income (loss)			($2,000a)
Taxable income			$822rh
Tax at 34%			$279rh
Less, previously computed tax			$75h
Underpayment of 1988 tax			$204rh

No Contract E costs were incurred in 1989, and there is no hypothetical underpayment for 1989.

	1990		
	D	E	Total
1990 contract costs		$7,000a	
Total contract costs		$9,000a	
Total contract price		$12,700r	
1990 completion (%)		100a	
1990 gross income		$9,878rh	
Less 1990 costs		(*$7,000a*)	
1990 net contract income		$2,878rh	$2,878rh
Other 1990 net income (loss)			0a
Taxable income (NOL)			$2,878rh
Tax at 34%			$978rh
Less, previously computed tax			$265h
Underpayment of 1990 tax			$713rh

In 1992, X incurs an additional cost of $1,000 allocable to the contract, which was not previously includible in total contract costs. Applying the Federal mid-term rate then in effect, the $1,000 has a discounted value at the time of contract completion of $800. X deducts this additional $1,000 in expenses in 1992. Based on this increase to contract costs, X reapplies the look-back method, and determines the following hypothetical underpayments for 1988, 1989 and 1990 for purposes of the look-back method:

	1988		Total
	D	E	
1988 contract costs	$3,000a	$2,000a	
Total contract costs	$6,000a	$9,800r	
Total contract price	$10,000a	$12,700r	
1988 completion (%)	50a	20.4r	
1988 gross income	$5,000h	$2,592rh	
Less, 1988 costs	(*$3,000a*)	(*$2,000a*)	
1988 net contract income	$2,000h	592rh	$2,592rh
Other 1988 net income (loss)			(*$2,000a)*
Taxable income (NOL)			$592rh
Tax at 34%			$201rh
Less, previously computed tax			$279rh
Overpayment of 1988 tax			($78rh)

No Contract E costs were incured in 1989, and there is no hypothetical underpayment for 1989.

	1990 D	1990 E	Total
1990 contract costs			$7,000a
Total contract costs		9,800r	
Total contract price		12,700r	
1990 completion (%)		92a	
1990 gross income		9,071rh	
Less, 1990 costs		(*7,000a*)	
1990 Net contract income		2,071rh	$2,071rh
Other 1990 net income (loss)			*0a*
Taxable income (NOL)			2,071rh
Tax at 34%			704rh
Less, previously computed tax			978rh
Overpayment of 1990 tax			(274rh)

(5) *Alternative minimum tax*. The operation of the look-back method in the case of a taxpayer liable for the alternative minimum tax as provided in paragraph (c)(3)(vi) is illustrated by the following examples:

Example (4). Y enters into a long-term contract in 1988 that is completed in 1989. Y used regular tax costs for purposes of determining the degree of contract completion under the alternative minimum tax.

(i) Y determines its tax liability for 1988 as follows:

1988 contract costs	$4,000a
Total contract costs	$8,000e
Total contract price	$20,000e
1988 completion (%)	50e
1988 gross income	$10,000a
Less, 1988 contract costs	(*$4,000a*
1988 net contract income	$6,000a
Other 1988 net income/(loss)	($3,400a)
Taxable income	$2,600a
Regular tax at 34%	884a
Adjustments and preferences to produce alternative minimum taxable income	$600a
Alternative minimum taxable income	$3,200a
Tentative minimum tax at 20%	640a
Tax liability	$884a

In 1989, Y determines the following amounts:

1989 contract costs	$6,000a
Total contract costs	$10,000a
Total contract price	$20,000a

(ii) For purposes of applying the look-back method, Y redetermines its tax liability for 1988, which results in a hypothetical overpayment of tax. This hypothetical overpayment is determined by comparing Y's original regular tax liability for 1988 with the hypothetical total tax liability (including alternative minimum tax liability) for that year because Y would have paid the alternative minimum tax if Y had used its actual contract costs to report income:

1988 contract costs	$4,000a
Total contract costs	$10,000a
Total contract price	$20,000a
1988 completion(%)	40a
1988 gross income	$8,000h
less, 1988 contract costs	($4,000a)
1988 net contract income	$4,000h
Other 1988 net income/(loss)	($3,400a)
Taxable income	$600h
Regular tax at 34%	$204h
Adjustments and preferences to produce alternative minimum taxable income	$600a
Alternative minimum taxable income	$1,200h
Tentative minimum tax at 20%	240h
Alternative minimum tax	$36h
Total tax liability	$240h
less, previously computed tax	$884a
Underpayment/(overpayment)	($644h)

(6) *Credit carryovers*. The operation of the look-back method in the case of credit carryovers as provided in paragraph (c)(3)(v) is illustrated by the following example:

Example (5). Z enters into a contract in 1986 that is completed in 1987. Z determines its tax liability for 1986 as follows:

1986 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$1,000e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1986 completion (%)	40e
1986 gross income	$800a
Less, 1986 costs	($400a)
1986 net contract income	$400a
Other 1986 net income	$0a
Taxable income	$400a
Tax at 46%	$184a
Unused tax credits carried forward from 1985 allowable in 1986	$350a
Net tax due	$0a

Z determines the following amounts for 1987:

1987 contract costs	$400a

Total contract price	$2,000a
Total contract costs	$800a

If Z had used actual rather than estimated contract costs in determining gross income for 1986, Z would have reported tax liability of $276 (46%x$600) rather than $184. However, Z would have paid no additional tax for 1986 because its unused tax credits carried forward from 1985 would have been sufficient to offset this increased tax liability. Therefore, there is no hypothetical underpayment for 1986 for purposes of the look-back method. However, this hypothetical earlier use of the credit may increase the hypothetical tax liability for 1987 (or another subsequent year) for purposes of subsequent applications of the look-back method.

(7) *Net operating losses.* The operation of the look-back method in the case of net operating loss (''NOL'') carryovers as provided in paragraph (c)(3)(v) is illustrated by the following example:

Example (6). A entered into a long-term contract in 1986, which was completed in 1987. A determined its tax liability for 1986 as follows:

1986 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$1,000e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1986 completion (%)	40e
1986 gross income	$800a
Less, 1986 costs	($400a)
1986 net contract income	$400a
Other 1986 net income/(loss)	($1,000a)
Taxable income/(NOL)	($600a)
Tax	$0a

A elected to carry this loss forward to 1987 pursuant to section 172(b)(3)(C).

For 1987, A determined the following amounts:

1987 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$800a
Total contract price	$2,000a

If actual rather than estimated contract costs had been used in determining gross income for 1986, A would have reported $1,000 of gross income from the contract rather than $800, and thus would have reported a loss of $400 rather than $600. However, since A would have paid no tax for 1986 regardless of whether actual or estimated contract costs had been used, A does not have an underpayment for 1986 for purposes of the look-back method. If A had, instead, carried back the 1986 NOL, and this NOL had been absorbed in the tax years 1983 through 1985, it would have resulted in refunds of tax for those years in 1986. When A applies the look-back method, a hypothetical underpayment of tax would have resulted for those years due to a hypothetical reduction in the amount that would have been refunded if income had been reported on the basis of actual contract costs. See Example (2)(iii).

(8) *Alternative minimum tax credit.* The following example illustrates the application of the look-back method if affected by the alternative minimum tax credit as provided in paragraph (c)(3)(vi):

(i) Example (4), above illustrates that the reallocation of contract income under the look-back method can result in a hypothetical underpayment or overpayment determined using the alternative minimum tax rate, even though the taxpayer actually paid only the regular tax for that year. However, application of the look-back method had no effect on the difference between the amount of alternative minimum taxable income and the amount of regular taxable income taken into account in that year because the taxpayer was required to use the percentage of completion method for both regular and alternative minimum tax purposes and used the same version of the percentage of completion method for both regular and alternative minimum tax purposes (*i.e.*, the taxpayer had made an election to use regular tax costs in determining the percentage of completion for purposes of computing alternative minimum taxable income).

(ii) The following example illustrates the application of the look-back method in the case of a taxpayer that does not use the percentage of completion method of accounting for long-term contracts in computing taxable income for regular tax purposes and thus must make an adjustment to taxable income to determine alternative minimum taxable income. The example also shows how interest is computed under the look-back method when the taxpayer is entitled to a credit under section 53 for minimum tax paid because of this adjustment.

Example (7). X is a taxpayer engaged in the construction of real property under contracts that are completed within a 24-month period and whose average annual gross receipts do not exceed $10,000,000. As permitted by section 460(e)(1)(B), X uses the completed contract method (''CCM'') for regular tax purposes. However, X is engaged in the construction of commercial real property and, therefore, is required to use the percentage of completion method (''PCM'') for alternative minimum tax (''AMT'') purposes.

Assume that for 1988, 1989, and 1990, X has only one long-term contract, which is entered into in 1988 and completed in 1990. Assume further that X estimates gross income from the contract to be $2,000, total contract costs to be $1,000, and that the contract is 25 percent complete in 1988 and 75 percent complete in 1989. In 1990, the year of completion, the percentage of completion does not change but, upon completion, gross income from the contract is actually $3,000, instead of $2,000, and costs are actually $1,000.

For 1988, 1989, and 1990, X's income and tax liability using estimated contract price and costs are as follows:

Estimates	1988	1989	1990
Regular tax:			
Long-term:			
Contract-CCM	0	0	$2,000
Other Income	0	$5,000	0
Total Income	0	$5,000	$2,000
Tax @ 34%	0	$1,700	$680
AMT			
Gross Income	$500	$1,000	$1,500
Deductions	$(250)	$(500)	$(250)
Total long-term:			
Contract-PCM	$250	$500	$1,250
Other Income	0	$5,000	0
Total Income	$250	$5,500	$1,250
Tax @ 20%	$50	$1,100	$250
Tentative Minimum Tax	$50	$1,100	$250
Regular Tax	0	$1,700	$680
Minimum Tax Credit	0	$(50)	0
Net Tax Liability	$50	$1,650	$680

When X files its tax return for 1990, X applies the look-back method to the contract. For 1988, 1989, and 1990, X's income and tax liability using actual contract price and costs are as follows:

Actual	1988	1989	1990
Regular tax:			
Long-term:			
Contract-CCM	0	0	$2,000
Other Income	0	$5,000	0
Total Income	0	$5,000	$2,000
Tax @ 34%	0	$1,700	$680
AMT			
Gross Income	$750	$1,500	$750
Deductions	$(250)	$(500)	$(250)
Total long-term:			
Contract-PCM	$500	$1,000	$500
Other Income	0	$5,000	0
Total Income	$500	$6,000	$500
Tax @ 20%	$100	$1,200	$100
Tentative Minimum Tax	$100	$1,200	$100
Regular Tax	0	$1,700	$680
Minimum Tax Credit	0	$(100)	0
Net Tax Liability	$100	$1,600	$680
Underpayment	$50		
Overpayment		$50	

As shown above, application of the look-back method results in a hypothetical underpayment of $50 for 1988 because X was subject to the alternative minimum tax for that year. Interest is charged to X on this $50 underpayment from the due date of X's 1988 return until the due date of X's 1990 return.

In 1989, although X was required to compute alternative minimum taxable income using the percentage of completion method, X was not required to pay alternative minimum tax. Nevertheless, the look-back method must be applied to 1989 because use of actual rather than estimated contract price in computing alternative minimum taxable income for 1988 would have changed the amount of the alternative minimum tax credit carried to 1989. Interest is paid to X on the resulting $50 overpayment from the due date of X's 1989 return until the due date of X's 1990 return.

(9) *Period for interest.* The following Examples (8) through (11) illustrate how to determine the period for computing interest as provided in paragraph (c)(4):

Example (8). The facts are the same as in Example (6), except that the contract is completed in 1988, and A determined the following amounts for 1987 and 1988:

For 1987:	
1987 contract costs	0
Total contract costs	$1,000e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1987 completion (%)	$40e
1987 gross income	0a
Less, 1987 costs	0a
Other 1987 net income	$600a
Net operating loss carryforward from 1986	$(600a)
Taxable income	0a
Tax	0a
For 1988:	
1988 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$800a
Total contract price	$2,000a

If actual rather than estimated contract costs had been used in determining gross income for 1986, A would have reported $1,000 of gross income from the contract for 1986 rather than $800, and would have reported a net operating loss carryforward to 1987 of $400 rather than $600. Therefore, A would have reported taxable income of $200, and would have paid tax of $80 (*i.e.*, $200×40%) for 1987. The due date for filing A's Federal income tax return for its 1988 taxable year is March 15. A obtains an extension and files its 1988 return on September 15, 1989. Under the look-back method, A is required to pay interest on the amount of this hypothetical underpayment ($80) computed from the due date (determined without regard to extensions) for A's return for 1987 (not 1986, even though 1986 was the year in which the net operating loss arose) until March 15 (not September 15), the due date (without regard to extensions) of A's return for 1988. A is required to pay additional interest from March 15 until September 15 on the amount of interest outstanding as of March 15 with respect to the hypothetical underpayment of $80.

Example (9). The facts are the same as in Example (6), except that A carries the net operating loss of $600 back to 1983 rather than forward to 1987, and receives a refund of $276 ($600 reduction in 1983 taxable income × 46% rate in effect in 1983). As in Example (6), if actual contract costs had been used, A would have reported a loss for 1986 of $400 rather than $600. Thus, A would have received a refund of 1983 tax of $184 ($400×46%) rather than $276. Under the look-back method A is required to pay interest on the difference in these two amounts ($92) computed from the due date (determined without regard to extensions) of A's return for 1986 (the year in which the carryback arose rather than 1983, the year in which it was used) until the due date of A's return for 1988.

Example (10). B enters into a long-term contract in 1986 that is completed in 1988. B determines its 1986 tax liability as follows:

1986 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$1,000e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1986 completion (%)	40e
1986 gross income	$800a
Less, 1986 costs	($400a)
1986 net contract income	$400a
Other 1986 net income	$2,000a
Taxable income	$2,400a
Tax at 46%	$1,104a
B determines its tax liability for 1987 as follows:	
1987 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$1,600e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1987 completion (%)	50e
1987 gross income	$200a
(=(50%×$2,000)X;$800 previously reported) less, 1987 costs	($400a)
1987 net contract income	($200a)
Other 1987 net income/(loss)	($2,200a)
Taxable income (NOL)	($2,400a)
Tax	0a

Assume that B had no taxable income in either 1984 or 1985, so that the entire amount of the $2,400 net operating loss is carried back to 1986, and B receives a refund, with interest from the due date of B's 1987 return, of the entire $1,104 in tax that it paid for 1986.

In 1988, B determines the following amounts:

1988 contract costs	$800a
Total contract costs	$1,600a
Total contract price	$2,000a

If B had used actual contract costs rather than estimated costs in determining its gross income for 1986, B would have had gross income from the contract of $500 rather than $800, and thus would have had taxable income of $2,100 rather than $2,400, and would have paid tax of $966 rather than $1,104. B is entitled to receive interest on the difference between these two amounts, the hypothetical overpayment of tax of $138. Interest is computed from the due date (without regard to extensions) of B's return for 1986 until the due date for B's return for 1987. Interest stops running at this date, because B's hypothetical overpayment of tax ended when B filed its original 1987 return and received a refund for the carryback to 1986, and interest on this refund began to run only from the due date of B's 1987 return. See section 6611(f).

Example (11). C enters into a long-term contract in 1986, its first year in business, which is completed in 1988. C determines its tax liability for 1986 as follows:

1986 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$1,000e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1986 completion (%)	40e
1986 gross income	$800a
less, 1986 costs	($400a)
1986 net contract income	$400a
Other 1986 net income	$2,000a
Taxable income (NOL)	$2,400a
Tax at 46%	$1,104a

C determines its tax liability for 1987 as follows:

1987 contract costs	$400a
Total contract costs	$1,066e
Total contract price	$2,000e
1987 completion (%)	75e
1987 gross income	$700a
Less, 1987 costs	($400a)
1987 net contract income	$300a
Other 1987 net income	($2,450a)
Taxable income (NOL)	($2,150a)
Tax	$10a

C carries back the net operating loss to 1986, and files an amended return for 1986, showing taxable income of $250, and receives a refund of $989 (46%×$2,150). Interest on this refund begins to run only as of the due date of C's 1987 return. See section 6611(f).

In 1988, when the contract is completed, C determines the following amounts:

1988 contract costs	$800a
Total contract costs	$1,600a
Total contract price	$2,000a

If C had used actual contract price and contract costs in determining gross income for 1986, it would have reported gross income from the contract of $500 rather than $800, taxable income of $2,100 rather than $2,400, and tax liability of $966 rather than $1,104.

If C had used actual contract price and contract costs in determining gross income for 1987, it would have reported gross income from the contract of $500 rather than $700, and would have reported a net operating loss of $2,350, rather than $2,150, which would have been carried back to 1986.

Under the look-back method, C receives interest with respect to a total 1986 hypothetical overpayment of $138 ($1,104 minus $966). C is credited with interest on $23 of this amount only from the due date of C's 1986 return until the due date of C's 1987 tax return, because this portion of C's total hypothetical overpayment for 1986 was refunded to C with interest computed from the due date of C's 1987 return and, therefore, was no longer held by the government. However, because the remainder of the total hypothetical overpayment of $115 was not refunded to C, C is credited with interest on this amount from the due date of C's 1986 return until the due date of C's 1988 tax return.

Under the look-back method, C receives no interest with respect to 1987, because C had no tax liability for 1987 using either estimated or actual contract price and costs.

(i) [Reserved]

(j) *Election not to apply look-back method in de minimis cases.* Section 460(b)(6) provides taxpayers with an election not to apply the look-back method to long-term contracts in de minimis cases, effective for contracts completed in taxable years ending after August 5, 1997. To make an election, a taxpayer must attach a statement to its timely filed original federal income tax return (including extensions) for the taxable year the election is to become effective or to an amended return for that year, provided the amended return is filed on or before March 31, 998. This statement must have the legend "NOTIFICATION OF ELECTION UNDER SECTION 460(b)(6)"; provide the taxpayer's name and identifying number and the effective date of the election; and identify the trades or businesses that involve long-term contracts. An election applies to all long-term contracts completed during and after the taxable year for which the election is effective. An election may not be revoked without the Commissioner's consent. For taxpayers who elected to use the delayed reapplication method under paragraph (e) of this section, an election under this paragraph (j) automatically revokes the election to use the delayed reapplication method for contracts subject to section 460(b)(6). A consolidated group of corporations, as defined in §1.1502–1(h), is subject to consistency rules analogous to those in paragraph (e)(2) of this section and in paragraph (d)(4)(ii)(C) of this section (concerning election to use simplified marginal impact method).

[T.D. 8315, 55 FR 41670, Oct. 15, 1990, as amended by T.D. 8775, 63 FR 36181, July 2, 1998; T.D. 8929, 66 FR 2240, Jan. 11, 2001; T.D. 8995, 67 FR 34609, May 15, 2002]

TAXABLE YEAR FOR WHICH DEDUCTIONS TAKEN

§ 1.461–0 Table of contents.

This section lists the captions that appear in the regulations under section 461 of the Internal Revenue Code.